

ECP 2006 DILI 510049

ENRICH

**Documentation and Training Materials for use with TEI P5
Specification for ENRICH**

Deliverable number	<i>D3.2</i>
Dissemination level	<i>Public</i>
Delivery date	<i>24 October 2008</i>
Status	<i>Final</i>
Author(s)	<i>Lou Burnard, James Cummings, Matthew Driscoll, Sebastian Rahtz</i>



eContentplus

This project is funded under the *eContentplus* programme¹,
a multiannual Community programme to make digital content in Europe more accessible, usable and exploitable.

¹ OJ L 79, 24.3.2005, p. 1.

Document Version Control

Version	Date	Change Made (and if appropriate reason for change)	Initials of Commentator(s) or Author(s)
0.0	10.10.2008	Draft Deliverable	LB,SR,JC,OUCS
0.1	21.10. 2008	Final version	LB,SR,JC,OUCS

Document Review

Reviewer	Institution	Date and result of the review
0.1	NKP, AIP	Accepted for submission to the EC

Approved By (signature)	Date
	24.10.2008

Accepted by at European Commission (signature)	Date

1 Executive Summary

This deliverable provides the user documentation for the TEI P5 Specification for ENRICH (D3.1) and training materials designed to be used by those instructing data entry staff who will be using the specification. The ENRICH specification is an XML format for the structure of the data which all ENRICH partners will contribute to the Manuscriptorium, either directly or indirectly by means of a harvester or conversion process. This deliverable consists of the internationalised user documentation and training materials for the ENRICH ODD, from which the documentation and ENRICH schema is created. The ENRICH ODD is a specification of an application of the TEI Release P5 customised to address the needs of capturing metadata of manuscript descriptions, metadata describing digitized images if they exist, and optionally transcription of text of original source manuscripts. The user documentation for the specification is available in HTML and PDF formats, and element descriptions have been translated from English into French, Spanish and Italian. The training materials are available as original and customisable TEI P5 XML or generated sets of PDF slides. All versions of both aspects of the deliverable D3.2 are available not only from the ENRICH website at: <http://enrich.manuscriptorium.com/index.php?q=node/34> but also at the local OUCS mirror at <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/>.

Sections below give more information on the documentation itself, and the training materials. As an example the English documentation is included as an example in an appendix. This has been normalised slightly in its formatting to include it in this document and the HTML or PDF versions available from the website should be considered the normative versions. The booklet with handouts of the training slides is also attached in the annex.

CONTENT

1	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	3
2	DOCUMENTATION	5
3	TRAINING MATERIALS	6
4	APPENDIX: ENGLISH TEI P5 ENRICH SPECIFICATION DOCUMENTATION	8
4.1	APPENDIX TABLE OF CONTENTS	8
4.2	1 INTRODUCTION	9
4.3	2 MANUSCRIPT DESCRIPTION METADATA	10
4.4	3 METADATA ABOUT DIGITAL FACSIMILES.....	45
4.5	4 CUSTOMIZATION SECTION	47
4.6	SCHEMA ENRICH: MODEL CLASSES	49
4.7	SCHEMA ENRICH: ATTRIBUTE CLASSES.....	61
4.8	SCHEMA ENRICH: MACROS	83
4.9	SCHEMA ENRICH: ELEMENTS	85
5	APPENDIX: BOOKLET WITH HANDOUTS	307

2 Documentation

The documentation has been added to the original ENRICH TEI P5 ODD specification and generated in HTML and PDF formats. As part of the internationalisation of the ENRICH specification, the descriptions of elements have been translated from English into French, Spanish and Italian. While the body of the documentation is currently only in English, the description of elements being in other languages will assist local coders in understanding the semantics of the ENRICH specification. Moreover, the same information is embedded in generated schemas which makes it available for additional assistance in XML editors which choose to exploit this. The English version of the documentation is crudely embedded in this document as an appendix but is also available online from the ENRICH website (in HTML and PDF formats) in its English, French, Spanish and Italian versions, which online versions should be considered the normative output from this deliverable.

English ([HTML](#)), ([PDF](#))

French ([HTML](#)),([PDF](#))

Spanish ([HTML](#)), ([PDF](#))

Italian ([HTML](#)), ([PDF](#))

These versions, along with other materials related to the deliverables, are also available not only from the ENRICH website at: <http://enrich.manuscriptorium.com/index.php?q=node/34> but also at the local OUCS mirror at <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/>. The documentation provides an introduction to the topic followed by a detailed description of the specification for manuscript description metadata. This incorporates sections on phrase-level elements, the manuscript identifier, intellectual content, physical description, history additional information and different parts of composite manuscripts. This is followed by sections on providing metadata about digital facsimiles, the nature of the TEI customization which is the ENRICH specification. The documentation concludes with substantial schema reference materials on the model and attribute classes, macros, and elements that make up the ENRICH specification. In-depth reading of this documentation should make the semantic distinctions of the ENRICH specification clear.

3 Training Materials

The D3.2 deliverable also provides training materials to introduce the necessary background required for those who will be working directly with documents conforming to the ENRICH TEI P5 specification as well as those needing to understand the concepts and semantics of the specification even when interacting with it through some intermediated application. In September 2006, the Oxford University Computing Services (OUCS) the WP3 leaders undertook, on behalf of the United Kingdom's Arts and Humanities Research Council's ICT Methods Network, a workshop on the 'Development of Skills in Advanced Text Encoding with TEI P5'. Its stated purpose was “to explore the different approaches currently used in the development of text encoding skills appropriate to resource creation and analysis in the arts and humanities.” See <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/Oxford/2006-09-methNet/> for more information. In investigating the different pedagogic methods useful in teaching TEI P5 and derived schemas such as the ENRICH specification, it developed a number of suggested course outlines. These placed a great emphasis on ‘learning by doing’ and on tailoring the training materials to the needs and expectations of the specific learner community being addressed. This kind of pedagogic style seems particularly appropriate to initiatives such as the TEI which have their origins in user needs, and are widely perceived as being responsive to a large user community for their development and maintenance. The training materials are provided as TEI P5 XML and generated PDF slides suitable for display. The original XML is provided with the intention that ENRICH project partners may wish to further customise, translate, or otherwise modify the slides for their own training needs. These are all available from the local OUCS ENRICH mirror at <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/> for public download by anyone who might find them useful. Basic slide sets have been provided on:

- [What is XML markup for?](#) (PDF; also [XML source](#))
- [Live long and prosper! Lessons from the TEI](#) (PDF; also [XML source](#))
- [Using the basic TEI structural elements](#) (PDF; also [XML source](#))
- [Names, People, and Places](#) (PDF; also [XML source](#))
- [Handling primary sources in TEI XML](#) (PDF; also [XML source](#))
- [A booklet with handouts of all the above slides](#) (PDF) – see appendix

These training materials have been tested during their development in a variety of contexts and are believed to be sufficient to lead a workshop providing the necessary training for those working with the ENRICH specification. The first is an introductory talk on the nature of textual markup and XML that familiarises students with the technologies involved. The second introduces the TEI and lessons that have been learnt over its long history. The third builds upon this to explain the basic structural elements used in any TEI document. As an example of one of the most frequently used TEI modules, and because it is of direct relevance to encoding manuscript descriptions, a slide set on Names, People, and Places is provided which also introduces basic handling of dates. The final set of training slides examines the TEI methods for dealing with primary source material. This covers a variety of topics but focuses on the use of the ENRICH specification for manuscript description. In addition a booklet providing handout pages of all the slide sets is provided. It is recognised that the application and usage of any training materials will always rely on the skills of the individual trainer, both in engaging with the concerns of the specific learner and in tailoring the available material to suit those concerns. These materials are provided as a starting point to assist those teaching the ENRICH specification, but it is assumed that they should only form a

portion of any training undertaken. In specific the pedagogic workshop mentioned above found that students learnt best when 'learning by doing', and so it is strongly recommended that practical exercises to reinforce the concepts being taught should be interspersed between the talks. This has been borne out when these materials have been tested and practical exercises have been assigned. Exercises such as these, however, are going to be so dependent on local encoding practices, software choices and initial student level that it is unproductive to include them as part of the deliverable. Moreover, OUCS is willing to advise its ENRICH partners or others on customising these materials for local use.

4 Appendix: English TEI P5 ENRICH Specification Documentation

This appendix contains the English version of the documentation for the TEI P5 ENRICH Specification. It is also available online from the ENRICH website (in HTML and PDF formats) in its English, French, Spanish and Italian versions, which online versions should be considered the normative output from this deliverable. These are available not only from the ENRICH website at: <http://enrich.manuscriptorium.com/index.php?q=node/34> but also at the local OUCS mirror at <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/>.

4.1 *Appendix Table of contents*

- 1 [Introduction](#)
- 2 [Manuscript Description Metadata](#)
 - 2.1 [Phrase-level Elements](#)
 - 2.1.1 [Origination](#)
 - 2.1.2 [Material](#)
 - 2.1.3 [Watermarks and Stamps](#)
 - 2.1.4 [Dimensions](#)
 - 2.1.5 [References to Locations within a Manuscript](#)
 - 2.1.6 [Names of Persons, Places, and Organizations](#)
 - 2.1.7 [Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio](#)
 - 2.1.8 [Heraldry](#)
 - 2.2 [The Manuscript Identifier](#)
 - 2.3 [Intellectual Content](#)
 - 2.3.1 [The <msItem>Element](#)
 - 2.3.2 [Authors and Titles](#)
 - 2.3.3 [Rubrics, Incipits, Explicits, and Other Quotations from the Text](#)
 - 2.3.4 [Filiation](#)
 - 2.3.5 [Text Classification](#)
 - 2.3.6 [Languages and Writing Systems](#)
 - 2.4 [Physical Description](#)
 - 2.4.1 [Object Description](#)
 - 2.4.1.1 [Support](#)
 - 2.4.1.2 [Extent](#)
 - 2.4.1.3 [Collation](#)
 - 2.4.1.4 [Foliation](#)
 - 2.4.1.5 [Condition](#)
 - 2.4.1.6 [Layout Description](#)
 - 2.4.2 [Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)
 - 2.4.2.1 [Writing](#)
 - 2.4.2.2 [Decoration](#)
 - 2.4.2.3 [Musical Notation](#)

- 2.4.2.4 [Additions and Marginalia](#)
 - 2.4.3 [Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material](#)
 - 2.4.3.1 [Binding Descriptions](#)
 - 2.4.3.2 [Seals](#)
 - 2.4.3.3 [Accompanying Material](#)
- 2.5 [History](#)
- 2.6 [Additional information](#)
 - 2.6.1 [Administrative information](#)
 - 2.6.1.1 [Record History](#)
 - 2.6.1.2 [Availability and Custodial History](#)
 - 2.6.2 [Surrogates](#)
- 2.7 [Manuscript Parts](#)
- 3 [Metadata about digital facsimiles](#)
- 4 [Customization Section](#)

4.2 1 Introduction

This document defines an XML format for the structure of the data which all ENRICH partners will contribute to the Manuscriptorium, either directly or indirectly by means of a harvester or transformation process. The schema is a conformant subset of Release 1.1.0 of TEI P5.

The schema defined by this document addresses three distinct aspects of a digitized manuscript:

1. metadata describing the original source manuscript ([2 Manuscript Description Metadata](#))
2. metadata describing digitized images of the original source manuscript ([3 Metadata about digital facsimiles](#))
3. a transcription of the text contained by the original source manuscript

Within Manuscriptorium, only the first two are required. However, the schema documented here also provides for the third, in the interest of completeness and for the assistance of ENRICH partners wishing to provide richer access facilities to their holdings.

The schema defined by this document is available in DTD, RELAX NG, and W3C Schema languages, downloadable from the address <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/ODD/RomaResults/>. A PDF version of the present document (300 pages) is also available from <http://tei.oucs.ox.ac.uk/ENRICH/Deliverables/referenceManual.pdf>; this forms one of the key deliverables for Work Package 3 of the ENRICH project.

The MASTER and MASTER-X specifications both defined comparatively unconstrained XML formats, which permitted a very wide range of possibilities and did not attempt to constrain (for example) values to any predefined set of values. While appropriate for an interchange format, this approach has some drawbacks.

- there may be wide variation in approaches taken to represent essentially the same phenomenon (e.g.)
- the format appears over complex to novice users, who will only ever want to use a very small subset of the possible tags

- developing software (e.g. stylesheets) for the format becomes unnecessarily complex, since every possibility must be allowed for even though it is unlikely to appear
- accurate searching of the data may be needlessly complicated by the large number of ways of representing e.g. attribute values such as dates

In the ENRICH schema the number of choices and the possible values of several attributes to have been considerably constrained. Nevertheless,

- the resulting schema remains fully TEI Conformant: we are only defining a subset
- all constraints introduced have the full consent of all partners in the project

The overall structure of an ENRICH-conformant XML document may be summarized as follows:

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!-- ... metadata describing the manuscript -->
  </teiHeader>
<facsimile>
<!-- ... metadata describing the digital images -->
</facsimile>
<text>
<!-- (optional) transcription of the manuscript -->
</text>
</TEI>
```

The remainder of this document describes each of these aspects in more detail, using material derived from the P5 release of the TEI Guidelines.

4.3 2 Manuscript Description Metadata

Each distinct manuscript must be described using a distinct TEI-conformant [teiHeader](#) element, as specified in the [TEI Guidelines, chapter 2](#). This element may contain many components, depending on the needs of the creator, which may be provided in either structured or (relatively) unstructured form. For Manuscriptorium purposes, the following components of the TEI Header *must* be provided, and *must* conform to the constraints specified here.

- [fileDesc](#) (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- [titleStmt](#) (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.
- [publicationStmt](#) (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- [sourceDesc](#) (source description) supplies a description of the source text(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated.
- [revisionDesc](#) (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

Other header components, if present, will be ignored by Manuscriptorium; they will be retained for storage in the system and returned on request, but their content is not processed for any purpose, including access.

The following example shows the minimal required structure:

```
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>

    <title>[Title of manuscript]</title>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
    <distributor>[name of data provider]</distributor>
    <idno>[project-specific identifier]</idno>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>

<msDesc xml:id="ex5" xml:lang="en">
    <!-- [full manuscript description ]-->
</msDesc>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<revisionDesc>
    <change when="2008-01-01">
        <!-- [revision information] -->
    </change>
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Taking these in turn,

- the title of the manuscript is used to identify it in short summary displays; it should correspond with the information used for the same purpose in the [head](#) element within the [msDesc](#) element below.
- the name of the data provider may be given in any conventional form but should be consistent across all data provided.
- the project-specific identifier has two parts: it consists of the short alphabetic code used to identify the partner (e.g. OCS for OUCS), followed by a four digit sequence number. For example, OCS0002 would be the second digital record contributed to the Manuscriptorium project by partner OCS. Note that this identifier has nothing to do with the manuscript shelfmark or other identifier. When ingesting records, Manuscriptorium will assume that if a record with this identifier already exists, the intention is to replace it.
- the manuscript description provided must follow the specification given in the remainder of this section.
- at least one [change](#) element must be provided, providing the date that this record was last revised before being submitted. As elsewhere, dates must be provided in the ISO format yyyy-mm-dd. The content of the [change](#) element is free text, which may be used to indicate the scope of any revision and the person/s responsible for it.
- [msDesc](#) (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript.

- xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
- xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to [BCP 47](#)

The [msDesc](#) element is used to provide detailed information about a single manuscript. For ENRICH purposes, this must carry the attributes mentioned above, to supply a unique internal identifier for the manuscript, and to specify the language of its description respectively.

The value for xml:id may be the same as the value supplied for the [idno](#) element in the [teiHeader](#), or it may be some other project-specific identifier used for cross-reference. It should however be prefixed by an identifier for the partner concerned, so as to avoid possible identifier collisions.

The value for xml:lang, as elsewhere, must be supplied in the form of a valid language identifier (see below). If no value is supplied, the assumption is that the language of the description is English.

The [msDesc](#) element has the following component elements, each of which is further described in the remainder of this section.

- [msIdentifier](#) (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described.
- [msContents](#) (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.
- [physDesc](#) (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialised elements from the model.physDescPart class.
- [history](#) groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [additional](#) groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information.
- [msPart](#) (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript.

The first of these components, [msIdentifier](#), is mandatory; it is described in more detail in [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#) below. It is followed by either one or more paragraphs, marked up as a series of [p](#) elements, or one or more of the specialized elements [msContents](#) ([2.3 Intellectual Content](#)), [physDesc](#) ([2.4 Physical Description](#)), [history](#) ([2.5 History](#)), and [additional](#) ([2.6 Additional information](#)). These elements are all optional, but if used they must appear in the order given here. Finally, in the case of a composite manuscript, a full description may also contain one or more [msPart](#) elements ([2.7 Manuscript Parts](#)).

To demonstrate the variety of records which may be produced, consider the following sample manuscript description, chosen more or less at random from the Bodleian Library's Summary catalogue

28843. In Latin, on parchment: written in more than one hand of the 13th cent. in England: $7\frac{1}{4} \times 5\frac{3}{8}$ in., i + 55 leaves, in double columns: with a few coloured capitals.

'Hic incipit Bruitus Anglie,' the De origine et gestis Regum Angliae of Geoffrey of Monmouth (Galfridus Monumetensis): *beg.* 'Cum mecum multa & de multis.'

On fol. 54^v very faint is 'Iste liber est fratris guillelmi de buria de ... Roberti ordinis fratrum Pred[icatorum],' 14th cent. (?): 'hanauilla' is written at the foot of the page (15th cent.). Bought from the rev. W. D. Macray on March 17, 1863, for £1 10s.

Now MS. Add. A. 61.

Figure 1. Entry for Bodleian MS. Add. A. 61 in Madan et al. 1895-1953

The simplest way of digitizing this catalogue entry would simply be to key in the text, tagging the relevant parts of it which make up the mandatory [msIdentifier](#) element, as follows:

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex4" xml:lang="en"> <msIdentifier>
<settlement>Oxford</settlement>
<repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
<idno>MS. Add. A. 61</idno>
<altIdentifier type="former">
  <idno>28843</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
```

```
<p>In Latin, on parchment: written in more than one hand of the 13th
cent. in England:  $7\frac{1}{4} \times 5\frac{3}{8}$  in., i + 55 leaves, in double columns: with a few coloured
capitals.</p> <p>'Hic incipit Bruitus Anglie,' the De origine et gestis Regum Angliae of
Geoffrey of Monmouth (Galfridus Monumetensis: beg. 'Cum mecum multa & de
multis.'</p> <p>On fol. 54v very faint is 'Iste liber est fratris guillelmi de buria de ... Roberti
ordinis fratrum Pred[icatorum],' 14th cent. (?): 'hanauilla' is written at the foot of the page
(15th cent.). Bought from the rev. W. D. Macray on March 17, 1863, for £1 10s.</p>
</msDesc>
```

With a suitable stylesheet, this encoding would be as readable as the original; it would not, however, be very useful for search purposes since only shelfmarks and other identifiers are distinguished by the markup. To improve on this, one might wrap the paragraphs in the appropriate special-purpose first-child-level elements of [msDesc](#) and use some additional phrase-level elements:

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex1" xml:lang="en">
<msIdentifier>
<settlement>Oxford</settlement>
<repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
<idno>MS. Add. A. 61</idno>
<altIdentifier type="former">
  <idno>28843</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
<msContents>
<p>
<quote xml:lang="lat">Hic incipit Bruitus Anglie,</quote> the
```

```
<title xml:lang="lat">De origine et gestis Regum Angliae</title> of Geoffrey of Monmouth
(Galfridus Monumetensis): beg. <quote xml:lang="lat">Cum mecum multa & de
multis.</quote> In Latin.</p>
</msContents>
<physDesc>
<p>
<material>Parchment</material>: written in more than one hand: 7¼ x 5⅜ in., i + 55 leaves,
in double columns: with a few coloured capitals.</p>
</physDesc>
<history>
<p>Written in
<origPlace>England</origPlace> in the
<origDate>13th cent.</origDate> On fol. 54v very faint is
<quote xml:lang="lat">Iste liber est fratris guillelmi de buria de ... Roberti ordinis fratrum
Pred[icatorum],</quote> 14th cent. (?): <quote>hanauilla</quote> is written at the foot of the
page (15th cent.). Bought from the rev. W. D. Macray on March 17, 1863, for £1 10s.</p>
</history>
</msDesc>
```

Such an encoding allows the user to search for such features as title, material, and date and place of origin; it is also possible to distinguish quoted material and Latin material from descriptive passages and to search within distinct parts of the description, for example, the manuscript history as distinct from its materials.

This process could be continued further, restructuring the whole entry so as to take full advantage of many more encoding possibilities:

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex2" xml:lang="en">
<msIdentifier>
<settlement>Oxford</settlement>
<repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
<idno>MS. Add. A. 61</idno>
<altIdentifier type="former">
<idno>28843</idno>
</altIdentifier> </msIdentifier>
<msContents>
<msItem>
<author xml:lang="en">Geoffrey of Monmouth</author>
<author xml:lang="la">Galfridus Monumetensis</author>
<title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">De origine et gestis Regum Angliae</title>
<rubric xml:lang="la">Hic incipit Bruitus Anglie</rubric>
<incipit xml:lang="la">Cum mecum multa & de multis</incipit>
<textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItem>
</msContents>
<physDesc>
<objectDesc form="codex">
<supportDesc material="perg">
<support>
<p>Parchment.</p>
```

```

        </support>
        <extent>i + 55 leaves
        <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="in">
        <height>7¼</height>
        <width>5⅜</width>
        </dimensions>
        </extent>
    </supportDesc>
    <layoutDesc>
        <layout columns="2">
        <p>In double columns.</p>
        </layout>
    </layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
<handDesc>
    <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
</handDesc>
<decoDesc>
    <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
</decoDesc> </physDesc> <history>
<origin>
    <p>Written in <origPlace>England</origPlace> in the
    <origDate notAfter="1300" notBefore="1200">13th cent.</origDate>
    </p>
</origin>
<provenance>
    <p>On fol. 54v very faint is
    <quote xml:lang="la">Iste liber est fratris guillelmi de buria de
    <gap reason="illegible"/> Roberti ordinis fratrum Pred<ex>icatorum</ex>
    </quote>, 14th cent. (?):
    <quote>hanauilla</quote> is written at the foot of the page (15th cent.).</p>
</provenance>
<acquisition>
    <p>Bought from the rev. <name type="person" key="MCRAYWD">W. D.
    Macray</name> on<date when="1863-03-17">March 17, 1863</date>, for £1 10s.</p>
</acquisition>
</history>
</msDesc>

```

4.3.1 2.1 Phrase-level Elements

Phrase-level elements are XML elements that can appear at the same hierarchic level as text in many parts of the digital record. Some of these are specialized, in that they may be used only within particular contexts; others may be used in any context (see [??](#)). Within the components of the [msDesc](#) element, the following specialized phrase level elements are available:

- [catchwords](#) describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunable, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page.
- [dimensions](#) contains a dimensional specification.

- [heraldry](#) contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc.
- [locus](#) defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references.
- [material](#) contains a word or phrase describing the material of which a manuscript (or part of a manuscript) is composed.
- [watermark](#) contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device.
- [origDate](#) (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [origPlace](#) (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [secFol](#) (second folio) The word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it.
- [signatures](#) contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex.

4.3.1.1 2.1.1 Origination

The following elements may be used to provide information about the origins of any aspect of a manuscript:

- [origDate](#) (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [origPlace](#) (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.

The [origDate](#) and [origPlace](#) elements are used to indicate the date and place of origin of a manuscript or manuscript part. Such information will usually appear within the [history](#) element, discussed in section [2.5 History](#), but can also appear within other parts of the manuscript description, such as its decoration or binding, when these are not of the same date as the manuscript itself. Both these elements are members of the [att.editLike](#) class, from which they inherit the following attributes:

- [att.editLike](#) provides attributes describing the nature of a encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

cert	(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
resp	(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
evidence	indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

The [origDate](#) element is a member of the [att.dataable](#) class, and may thus also carry the following attributes:

- [att.dataable.w3c](#) provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

notBefore	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
notAfter	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
when	supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

4.3.1.2 2.1.2 Material

The [material](#) element can be used to tag any specific term used for the physical material of which a manuscript (or binding, seal, etc.) is composed.

- [material](#) contains a word or phrase describing the material of which a manuscript (or part of a manuscript) is composed.

The element may appear wherever a term regarded as significant by the encoder occurs, as in the following example:

<binding> <p>Brown <material>calfskin</material>, previously with two clasps.</p></binding>

4.3.1.3 2.1.3 Watermarks and Stamps

Two further elements are provided to mark up other decorative features characteristic of manuscript leaves and bindings:

- [watermark](#) contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device.
- [stamp](#) contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device.

These elements may appear wherever a term regarded as significant by the encoder occurs.

The [watermark](#) element is most likely to be of use within the [support](#) element discussed in [2.4.1.1 Support](#) below. We give a simple example here:

<support> <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark> watermark</support>

The [stamp](#) element will typically appear when text from the source is being transcribed, for example within a rubric in the following case:

<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/> SI NON LICET<lb/> NOBIS RO<lb/> manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp> <lb/></rubric>

It may also appear as part of the detailed description of a binding:

<binding> <p>Modern calf recasing with original armorial stamp <stamp>Ex Bibliotheca J. Richard D.M.</stamp> </p></binding>

4.3.1.4 2.1.4 Dimensions

The [dimensions](#) element can be used to specify the size of some aspect of the manuscript.

- [dimensions](#) contains a dimensional specification.
type indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

The [dimensions](#) element will normally occur within the element describing the particular feature or aspect of a manuscript whose dimensions are being given; thus the size of the leaves would be specified within the [support](#) or [extent](#) element (part of the [physDesc](#) element discussed in [2.4.1 Object Description](#)), while the dimensions of other specific parts of a manuscript, such as accompanying materials, binding, etc., would be given in other parts of the description, as appropriate.

The type attribute on the [dimensions](#) element is used to specify more exactly the item being measured. For ENRICH purposes, this attribute must take one of the following values: leaf, binding, slip, written, boxed.

The following three elements are available within the [dimensions](#) element:

- [height](#) contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the spine.
- [width](#) contains a measurement measured along the axis perpendicular to the spine.
- [depth](#) specifies a length measured across the spine.

Each of these elements, if present, must be given in the order specified.

These three elements, as well as [dimensions](#) itself, are all members of the [att.dimensions](#) class, and thus all carry the following attributes:

- [att.dimensions](#) provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

extent	indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
unit	names the unit used for the measurement
quantity	specifies the length in the units specified
atLeast	gives a minimum estimated value for the measurement.
atMost	gives a maximum estimated value for the measurement.
min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, supplies the minimum value observed.
max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, supplies the maximum value observed.
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Attributes min, max, and scope are used only when the measurement applies to several items, for example the size of many or all the leaves in a manuscript; attributes atLeast and atMost are used when the measurement applies to a single item, for example the size of a specific codex, but has had to be estimated. Attribute <quantity> is used when the measurement can be given exactly, and applies to a single item; this is the usual situation. The units in which dimensions are measured should always be specified using the unit attribute, which will normally be taken from a closed set of values appropriate to the project, using standard units of measurement wherever possible. In the ENRICH project the following values are permitted: cm, mm, in, line, char. If the only data available for the measurement uses some other unit, or it is preferred to normalize it in some other way, then it may be supplied as a string value using the extent attribute.

The content of these elements, if present, simply copies the way that the measurement is presented in some source text; it may be omitted.

In the simplest case, only the extent attribute may be supplied:

```
<width extent="6 cubit">six cubits</width>
```

More usually, the measurement will be normalised into a value and an appropriate SI unit:

```
<width quantity="270" unit="cm">six cubits</width>
```

Where the exact value is uncertain, the attributes atLeast and atMost may be used to indicate the upper and lower bounds of an estimated value:

```
<width atLeast="250" atMost="300" unit="cm">six cubits</width>
```

It is often convenient to supply a measurement which applies to a number of discrete observations: for example, the number of ruled lines on the pages of a manuscript (which may

not all be the same), or the diameter of an object like a bell, which will differ depending where it is measured. In such cases, the scope attribute may be used to specify the observations for which this measurement is applicable:

```
<height unit="lines" scope="most" atLeast="20"/>
```

This indicates that most pages have at least 20 lines. The attributes min and max can also be used to specify the possible range of values: for example, to show that all pages have between 12 and 30 lines:

```
<height unit="lines" scope="all" min="12" max="30"/>
```

The [dimensions](#) element may be repeated as often as necessary, with appropriate attribute values to indicate the nature and scope of the measurement concerned. For example, in the following case the leaf size and ruled space of the leaves of the manuscript are specified:

```
<dimensions type="written" unit="mm"> <height scope="most" quantity="90" unit="mm"/>  
<width scope="most" quantity="48" unit="mm"/></dimensions><dimensions type="leaf"> <  
height min="157" max="160" unit="mm"/> <width quantity="105"/></dimensions>
```

This indicates that for most leaves of the manuscript being described the ruled space is 90 mm high and 48 mm wide, while the leaves throughout are between 157 and 160 mm in height and 105 mm in width.

4.3.1.5 2.1.5 References to Locations within a Manuscript

The [locus](#) element is a specialized form of the [ref](#) element.

- [locus](#) defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references.
 - from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form.
 - to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form.
 - scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified.

The [locus](#) element is used to specify the location in the manuscript occupied by the element within which it appears. It should be supplied as the first component of an [msItem](#) element, or of any of the more specific elements appearing within one (see further section [2.3 Intellectual Content](#) below, in order to specify the location of that item within the manuscript being described.

A [locus](#) element can be used to identify any reference to one or more folios within a manuscript, wherever such a reference is appropriate. Locations are conventionally specified as a sequence of folio or page numbers, but may also be a discontinuous list, or a combination of the two. This specification should be given as the content of the [locus](#) element, using the conventions appropriate to the individual scholar or holding institution, as in the following example:

```
<msItem n="1"> <locus>ff. 1-24r</locus> <title>Apocalypsis beati Ioannis  
Apostoli</title></msItem>
```

A normalized form of the location can also be supplied, using special purpose attributes on the [locus](#) element, as in the following revision of the above example:

```
<msItem n="1"> <locus from="1r" to="24r">ff. 1-24r</locus> <title>Apocalypsis beati  
Ioannis Apostoli</title></msItem>
```

If a digital image is available for the locus described by the [locus](#) element, then the [facs](#) attribute should be used to associate it with that image, as in the following example:

```
<decoDesc> <p>Several of the miniatures in this section have been damaged and  
overpainted at a later date (e.g. the figure of Christ on <locus facs="#F33R">fol. 33r</locus>;
```

the face of the Shepherdess on <locus facs="#F59V">fol. 59v</locus>, etc.).</p></decoDesc>

Usually, the facs attribute points directly to a [surface](#) element within the [facsimile](#) element associated with the manuscript description, as further discussed in section [3 Metadata about digital facsimiles](#) below. It is also possible, but not recommended, to use this attribute to point to images of the relevant pages held in some other external image archive.

Where a transcription of the relevant pages is also available, this may be pointed to using the target attribute, as in the following example:

```
<!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1"> <locus target="#f1r #f1v #f2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus> <author>Ben Jonson</author> <title>Ode to himself</title> <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric> <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit> <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit> <bibl>
```

```
<name type="person">Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl></msItem><!-- within transcription ... --><pb xml:id="f1r"/><!-- ... --><pb xml:id="f1v"/><!-- ... --><pb xml:id="f2r"/><!-- ... -->
```

Where a manuscript contains more than one foliation, the scheme attribute may be used to distinguish them. For example, MS 65 Corpus Christi College, Cambridge contains two fly leaves bearing music. These leaves have modern foliation 135 and 136 respectively, but are also marked with an older foliation. This may be preserved in an encoding such as the following:

```
<locus scheme="#original">XCIII</locus><locus scheme="#modern">135</locus>
```

Here the scheme attribute points to a [foliation](#) element providing more details about the scheme used, as further discussed in [2.4.1.4 Foliation](#) below.

4.3.1.6 2.1.6 Names of Persons, Places, and Organizations

The standard TEI element [name](#) may be used to identify names of any kind occurring within a description:

- [name](#) (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.
type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

As further discussed in <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS>, this element is a member of the TEI class [att.canonical](#), from which it inherits the following attributes:

- [att.canonical](#) provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.
key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.
ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Here are some examples of the use of the [name](#) element:

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name><name type="place">Villingaholt</name><name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name><name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occeleve</name>
```

Note that the [name](#) element is defined as providing information about a *name*, not the person, place, or organization to which that name refers. In the last example above, the ref attribute is

used to associate the name with a more detailed description of the person named. This is provided by means of the [person](#) element, which is also available in the ENRICH schema. An element such as the following might then be used to provide detailed information about the person indicated by the name:

```
<person xml:id="HOC001" sex="1"> <persName>
<surname>Hoccleve</surname>
<forename>Thomas</forename> </persName> <birth notBefore="1368"/> <occupation>poet
</occupation><!-- other personal data --></person>
```

Note that an instance of the [person](#) element must be provided for each distinct ref value specified. In the example above, the value HOC001 must be found as the xml:id attribute of some [person](#); the same value will be used as the ref attribute of every reference to Hoccleve in the document (however spelled), but there will only be one [person](#) element with this identifier.

Alternatively, the key attribute may be used to supply an identifying code for the person referenced by the name independently of both the existence of a [person](#) element and the use of the standard URI reference mechanism. If, for example, a project maintains as its authority file some non-digital resource, or uses a database which cannot readily be integrated with other digital resources for this purpose, the unique codes used by such ‘offline’ resources may be used as values for the key attribute. Although such practices clearly reduce the interchangeability of the resulting encoded texts, they may be judged more convenient or practical in certain situations.

All the [person](#) elements referenced by a particular document set should be collected together within a [listPerson](#) element, located in the TEI Header. This functions as a kind of prosopography for all the people referenced by the set of manuscripts being described, in much the same way as a [listBibl](#) element in the back matter may be used to hold bibliographic information for all the works referenced.

Similar mechanisms are used to maintain and reference canonical lists of places or organizations.

4.3.1.7 2.1.7 Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio

The [catchwords](#) element is used to describe one method by which correct ordering of the quires of a codex is ensured. Typically, this takes the form of a word or phrase written in the lower margin of the last leaf verso of a gathering, which provides a preview of the first recto leaf of the successive gathering. This may be a simple phrase such as the following:

```
<catchwords>Quires signed on the last leaf verso in roman numerals.</catchwords>
```

Alternatively, it may contain more details:

```
<catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along the inner bounding
line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords>
```

The ‘Signatures’ element is used, in a similar way, to describe a similar system in which quires or leaves are marked progressively in order to facilitate arrangement during binding. For example:

```
<signatures>At the bottom of the first four leaves of quires 1-14 are the remains of a series of
quire signatures a-o plus roman figures in a cursive hand of the fourteenth
century.</signatures>
```

The [signatures](#) element can be used for either leaf signatures, or a combination of quire and leaf signatures, whether the marking is alphabetic, alphanumeric, or some ad hoc system, as in the following more complex example:

<signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic numerals in the centre lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4", barely visible, for quire 10 (f. 65), "5", in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6", in a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>

The [secFol](#) element (for 'secundo folio') is used to record an identifying phrase (also called dictio probatoria) taken from a specific known point in a codex (for example the first few words on the second leaf). Since these words will differ from one copy of a text to another, the practice originated in the middle ages of using them when cataloguing a manuscript in order to distinguish individual copies of a work in a way which its opening words could not.

<secFol>(ando-)ssene in una villa</secFol>

4.3.1.8 2.1.8 Heraldry

Descriptions of heraldic arms, supporters, devices, and mottos may appear at various points in the description of a manuscript, usually in the context of ownership information, binding descriptions, or detailed accounts of illustrations. A full description may also contain a detailed account of the heraldic components of a manuscript independently considered.

Frequently, however, heraldic descriptions will be cited as short phrases within other parts of the record. The phrase level element [heraldry](#) is provided to allow such phrases to be marked for further analysis, as in the following examples:

<p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms <heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty, in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole], crest, and the legend <quote>Cole Deum</quote>.</p><!-- ... --><p>A c. 8r fregio su due lati, <heraldry>stemma e imprese medicee</heraldry> racchiudono l'inizio dell'epistolario di Paolino.</p>

4.3.2 2.2 The Manuscript Identifier

The [msIdentifier](#) element is intended to provide an unambiguous means of uniquely identifying a particular manuscript. This may be done in a structured way, by providing information about the holding institution and the call number, shelfmark, or other identifier used to indicate its location within that institution. Alternatively, or in addition, a manuscript may be identified simply by a commonly used name.

- [msIdentifier](#) (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described.

A manuscript's actual physical location may occasionally be different from its place of ownership; at Cambridge University, for example, manuscripts owned by various colleges are kept in the central University Library. Normally, it is the ownership of the manuscript which should be specified in the manuscript identifier, while additional or more precise information on the physical location of the manuscript can be given within the [adminInfo](#) element, discussed in section [2.6.1 Administrative information](#) below.

The following elements are available within [msIdentifier](#) to identify the holding institution:

- [country](#) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc.
- [region](#) contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country.
- [settlement](#) contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit.

- [institution](#) contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution.
- [repository](#) contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution.

Only one of each of the elements listed above may appear within the [msIdentifier](#) and they must, if present, appear in the order given.

[Note: Should we make country mandatory?]

These elements are all also members of the attribute class [att.naming](#), from which they inherit the following attribute:

- [att.naming](#) provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

The following elements are used within [msIdentifier](#) to provide different ways of identifying the manuscript within its holding institution:

- [collection](#) contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository.
- [idno](#) (identifying number) supplies any standard or non-standard number used to identify a bibliographic item.
- [altIdentifier](#) (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number.
type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
- [msName](#) (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an ‘ocellus nominum’, or nickname.

Major manuscript repositories will usually have a preferred form of citation for manuscript shelfmarks, including rules about punctuation, spacing, abbreviation, etc., which should be adhered to. Where such a format also contains information which might additionally be supplied as a distinct subcomponent of the [msIdentifier](#), for example a collection name, a decision must be taken as to whether to use the more specific element, or to include such information within the [idno](#) element. For example, the manuscript formally identified as ‘El 26 C 0’ forms a part of the Ellesmere (‘El’) collection. Either of the following encodings is therefore feasible:

```
<msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region type="state">California</region> <settle  
ment>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington  
Library</repository> <collection>El</collection> <idno>26 C 9</idno> <msName>The  
Ellesmere Chaucer</msName></msIdentifier>
```

```
<msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region type="state">California</region> <settle  
ment>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <idno>El 26 C  
9</idno> <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName></msIdentifier>
```

In the former example, the preferred form of the identifier can be retrieved by prefixing the content of the [idno](#) element with that of the [collection](#) element, while in the latter it is given explicitly. The advantage of the former is that it simplifies accurate retrieval of all manuscripts from a given collection; the disadvantage is that encoded abbreviations of this kind may not be as immediately comprehensible. Care should be taken to avoid redundancy: for example

```
<collection>El</collection><idno>El 26 C 9</idno>
```

would clearly be inappropriate. Equally clearly,

<collection>Ellesmere</collection><idno>El 26 C 9</idno>

might be considered helpful in some circumstances (if, for example, some of the items in the Ellesmere collection had shelfmarks which did not begin 'El')

In cases where the shelfmark contains no information about the collection, it may be necessary to provide this explicitly, as in the following example:

```
<msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region type="state">New
Jersey</region> <settlement>Princeton</settlement> <repository>Princeton University
Library</repository> <collection>Scheide Library</collection> <idno>MS
71</idno> <msName>Blickling Homiliary</msName></msIdentifier>
```

In these examples, [msName](#) has been used to provide a common name other than the shelfmark by which a manuscript is known. Where a manuscript has several such names, more than one of these elements may be used, as in the following example:

```
<msIdentifier> <country>Danmark</country> <settlement>København</settlement> <reposit
tory>Det Arnamagnæanske Institut</repository> <idno>AM 45
fol.</idno> <msName xml:lang="la">Codex
Frisianus</msName> <msName xml:lang="is">Fríssbók</msName></msIdentifier>
```

Here the globally available `xml:lang` attribute has been used to specify the language of the alternative names.

In very rare cases a repository may have only one manuscript (or only one of any significance), which will have no shelfmark as such but will be known by a particular name or names. In such circumstances, the [idno](#) element may be omitted, and the manuscript identified by the name or names used for it, using one or more [msName](#) elements, as in the following example:

```
<msIdentifier> <settlement>Rossano</settlement> <repository xml:lang="it">Biblioteca
arcivescovile</repository> <msName xml:lang="la">Codex
Rossanensis</msName> <msName xml:lang="la">Codex
purpureus</msName> <msName xml:lang="en">The Rossano
Gospels</msName></msIdentifier>
```

Where manuscripts have moved from one institution to another, or even within the same institution, they may have identifiers additional to the ones currently used, such as former shelfmarks, which are sometimes retained even after they have been officially superseded. In such cases it may be useful to supply an alternative identifier using the [altIdentifier](#) element, which has a detailed structure similar to that of the [msIdentifier](#) element, and an additional attribute type to indicate what kind of alternative identifier this is. Only the following possibilities are envisaged:

- former
- former catalogue or shelf number
- partial
- identifier of a previously distinct item
- internal
- internal project identifier
- other
- other unspecified identifier

The following example shows a manuscript which had shelfmark II-M-5 in the collection of the Duque de Osuna, but which now has the shelfmark MS 10237 in the National Library in Madrid:

```
<msIdentifier> <settlement>Madrid</settlement> <repository>Biblioteca
Nacional</repository> <idno>MS 10237</idno> <altIdentifier type="former">
<region type="state">Andalucia</region>
```

```
<settlement>Osuna</settlement>
<repository>Duque de Osuna</repository>
<idno>II-M-5</idno> </altIdentifier></msIdentifier>
```

Alternatively, such information may be dealt with under [history](#) or [adminInfo](#), except in cases where a manuscript is likely still to be referred to or known by its former identifier.

Cases of such changed or alternative identifiers should be clearly distinguished from cases of ‘scattered’ manuscripts, that is to say manuscripts which although physically disjoint are nevertheless generally treated as single units. One well-known example is the Old Church Slavonic manuscript known as Codex Suprasliensis, substantial parts of which are to be found in three separate repositories, in Ljubljana, Warsaw, and St. Petersburg. This should be represented using three distinct [altIdentifier](#) elements, using the value partial on the type attribute to indicate that these three identifiers are not alternate ways of referring to the same physical object, but three parts of the same entity.

```
<msIdentifier> <msName xml:lang="la">Codex
Suprasliensis</msName> <altIdentifier type="partial">

<settlement>Ljubljana</settlement>

<repository>Narodna in univerzitetna knjižnica</repository>

<idno>MS Kopitar 2</idno>

<note>Contains ff. 10 to 42 only</note> </altIdentifier> <altIdentifier type="partial">

<settlement>Warszawa</settlement>

<repository>Biblioteka Narodowa</repository>

<idno>BO 3.201</idno> </altIdentifier> <altIdentifier type="partial">

<settlement>Sankt-Peterburg</settlement>

<repository>Rossiiskaia natsional'naia biblioteka</repository>

<idno>Q.p.I.72</idno> </altIdentifier></msIdentifier>
```

As mentioned above, the smallest possible description is one that contains only the element [msIdentifier](#); good practice in all but exceptional circumstances requires the presence within it of the three sub-elements [settlement](#), [repository](#), and [idno](#), since they provide what is, by common consent, the minimum amount of information necessary to identify a manuscript.

4.3.3 2.3 Intellectual Content

The [msContents](#) element is used to describe the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. It comprises *either* a series of informal prose paragraphs *or* a series of [msItem](#) elements, each of which provides a more detailed description of a single item contained within the manuscript. These may be prefaced, if desired, by a [summary](#) element, which is especially useful where one wishes to provide an overview of a manuscript's contents and describe only some of the items in detail.

- [msContents](#) (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.
- [msItem](#) (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part.

In the simplest case, only a brief description may be provided, as in the following examples:

<msContents> <p>A collection of Lollard
sermons</p></msContents><msContents> <p>Atlas of the world from Western Europe and
Africa to Indochina, containing 27 maps and 26
tables</p></msContents><msContents> <p>Biblia sacra: Antiguo y Nuevo Testamento, con
prefacios, prólogos y argumentos de san Jerónimo y de otros. Interpretaciones de los
nombres hebreos.</p></msContents>

This description may of course be expanded to include any of the TEI elements generally
available within a [p](#) element, such as [title](#), [bibl](#), or [list](#). More usually, however, each
individual work within a manuscript will be given its own description, using the [msItem](#)
element described in the next section, as in the following example:

```
<msContents> <msItem n="1">
<locus>fols. 5r -7v</locus>
<title>An ABC</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope type="pages">239</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="2">
<locus>fols. 7v -8v</locus>
<title xml:lang="fr">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope type="pages">3747</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="3">
<locus>fol. 8v</locus>
<title>Truth</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope type="pages">809</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="4">
<locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus>
<title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope type="pages">1506</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="5">
<locus>fols. 10v -11v</locus>
<title xml:lang="la">De amico ad amicum</title>
<title xml:lang="la">Responcio</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope type="pages">16 & 19</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="6">
<locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
<title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
<note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note> </msItem></msContents>
```


4.3.3.1 2.3.1 The [msItem](#) Element

Each discrete item in a manuscript or manuscript part can be described within a distinct [msItem](#) element, and may be classified using the class attribute.

These are the possible component elements of [msItem](#).

- [author](#) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; the primary statement of responsibility for any bibliographic item.
- [respStmt](#) (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.
- [title](#) contains the full title of a work of any kind.
- [rubric](#) contains the text of any rubric or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device.
- [incipit](#) contains the incipit of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title.
- [quote](#) (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.
- [explicit](#) contains the explicit of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it.
- [finalRubric](#) contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device.
- [colophon](#) contains the colophon of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript.
- [decoNote](#) (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components.
- [listBibl](#) (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.
- [bibl](#) (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- [filiation](#) contains information concerning the manuscript's filiation, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its protographs, antigraphs and apographs.
- [note](#) contains a note or annotation.
- [textLang](#) (text language) describes the languages and writing systems used by a manuscript (as opposed to its description, which is described in the [langUsage](#) element).

If early printed material or incunables are described using this schema, the [msItem](#) should be used to record details of each distinct work contained by the incunable. In this situation, the following extra elements may be found useful to transcribe relevant details from the original titlepage:

- [docAuthor](#) (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
- [docTitle](#) (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
- [docImprint](#) (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

These elements are also available within the [msItem](#) element.

In addition, an [msItem](#) may contain nested [msItem](#) elements.

Untagged running text is not permitted directly within an [msItem](#), unless it is given within a [p](#) element, in which case none of the other component elements listed above is permitted.

The elements [msContents](#), [msItem](#), [incipit](#), and [explicit](#) are all members of the class [att.msExcerpt](#) from which they inherit the defective attribute.

- [att.msExcerpt](#) (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof.
defective indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.

This attribute can be used for example with collections of fragments, where each fragment is given as a separate [msItem](#) and the first and last words of each fragment are transcribed as defective incipits and explicits .

4.3.3.2 2.3.2 Authors and Titles

When used within a manuscript description, the [title](#) element should be used to supply a regularized form of the item's title, as distinct from any rubric quoted from the manuscript. If the item concerned has a standardized distinctive title, e.g. Roman de la Rose, then this should be the form given as content of the [title](#) element, with the value of the type attribute given as `uniform`. If no uniform title exists for an item, or none has been yet identified, or if one wishes to provide a general designation of the contents, then a 'supplied' title can be given, e.g. missal, in which case the type attribute on the [title](#) should be given the value `supplied`.

Similarly, if used within a manuscript description, the [author](#) element should always contain the normalized form of an author's name, irrespective of how (or whether) this form of the name is cited in the manuscript. If it is desired to retain the form of the author's name as given in the manuscript, this should be given in the [docAuthor](#) element, or as a distinct [name](#) element, within the text at the point where it occurs.

Note that the key or ref attributes can be used, on titles and on author names as on names in general, to link the name to a more detailed description of the person or work concerned (see further [2.1.6 Names of Persons, Places, and Organizations](#)).

The [respStmt](#) element can be used to supply the name and role of a person other than the author who is responsible for some aspect of the intellectual content of the manuscript:

```
<author>Diogenes Laertius</author><respStmt> <resp>in the translation  
of</resp> <name type="person">Ambrogio Traversari</name></respStmt>
```

The [resp](#) element is also a member of the `att.canonical` class, from which it inherits the key attribute. For ENRICH purposes, this may be used to supply a standard relationship code for the kind of responsibility concerned, as defined in the list maintained at

<http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> :

<respStmt> <resp key="trl">přeložil</resp> <name type="person">John
Enrich</name></respStmt>

The [respStmt](#) element can also be used where there is a discrepancy between the author of an item as given in the manuscript and the accepted scholarly view, as in the following example:

<title type="supplied">Sermons on the Epistles and the
Gospels</title><respStmt> <resp>here erroneously attributed
to</resp> <name type="person">St. Bonaventura</name></respStmt>

Note that such attributions of authorship, both correct and incorrect, are frequently found in the rubric or final rubric (and occasionally also elsewhere in the text), and can therefore be transcribed and included in the description, if desired, using the [rubric](#), [finalRubric](#), or [quote](#) elements, as appropriate.

4.3.3.3 2.3.3 Rubrics, Incipits, Explicits, and Other Quotations from the Text

It is customary in a manuscript description to record the opening and closing words of a text as well as any headings or colophons it might have, and the specialised elements [rubric](#), [incipit](#), [explicit](#), [finalRubric](#), and [colophon](#) are available within [msItem](#) for doing so, along with the more general [quote](#), for recording other bits of the text not covered by these elements. Each of these elements has the same substructure, containing a mixture of phrase-level elements and plain text. A [locus](#) element can be included within each, in order to specify the location of the component, as in the following example:

```
<msContents> <msItem>
<locus>f. 1-223</locus>
<author>Radulphus Flaviacensis</author>
<title>Expositio super Leviticum </title>
<incipit>
<locus>f. 1r</locus>   Forte Hervei monachi</incipit>
<explicit>
<locus>f. 223v</locus>   Benedictio salis et aquae</explicit> </msItem></msContents>
```

In the following example, standard TEI elements for the transcription of primary sources have been used to mark the expansion of abbreviations and other features present in the original:

```
<msItem defective="true"> <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus> <title type="uniform">Ágrip af  
Noregs konunga s□gum</title> <incipit defective="true">regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> seti  
ho<gap reason="illegible" quantity="7" unit="mm"/>  
<lb/>sc heim se<ex>m</ex> pio</incipit> <explicit defective="true">h<ex>on</ex>  
hev<ex>er</ex>  
<ex>oc</ex> þa buit hesta .ij. <lb/>annan við fé en h<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> annan til  
reiþ<ex>ar</ex> </explicit></msItem>
```

Note here also the use of the defective attribute on [incipit](#) and [explicit](#) to indicate that the text begins and ends defectively.

The xml:lang attribute for [colophon](#), [explicit](#), [incipit](#), [quote](#), and [rubric](#) may always be used to identify the language of the text quoted, if this is different from the default language specified by the mainLang attribute on [textLang](#).

4.3.3.4 2.3.4 Filiation

The [filiation](#) element can be used to provide information on the relationship between the manuscript and other surviving manuscripts of the same text, either specifically or in a general way, as in the following example:

```
<msItem> <locus>118rb</locus> <incipit>Ecce morior cum nichil horum ... <ref>[Dn 13, 43]</ref>. Verba ista dixit Susanna de illis</incipit> <explicit>ut bonum comune conservatur.</explicit> <bibl>Schneyer 3, 436 (Johannes Contractus OFM)</bibl> <filiation>weitere Überl. Uppsala C 181, 35r.</filiation></msItem>
```

4.3.3.5 2.3.5 Text Classification

One or more text classification or text-type codes may be specified, either for the whole of the [msContents](#) element, or for one or more of its constituent [msItem](#) elements, using the class attribute as specified above:

```
<msContents> <msItem n="1" defective="false" class="#law">
<locus from="1v" to="71v">1v-71v</locus>
<title type="uniform">Jónsbók</title>
<incipit>Magnus m<ex>ed</ex> guds miskun Noregs k<ex>onungu</ex>r</incipit>
<explicit>en<ex>n</ex> u<ex>ir</ex>da þo t<ex>il</ex> fullra
aura</explicit> </msItem></msContents>
```

The value of the class attribute should specify the identifier used for the appropriate classification within a [taxonomy](#) element, defined in the [classDecl](#) element of the TEI Header (<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55>), as shown here:

```
<classDecl> <taxonomy><!-- -->
<category xml:id="law">
<catDesc>Laws</catDesc>
</category><!-- --> </taxonomy></classDecl>
```

[Note: Should ENRICH define its own taxonomy for this purpose, or re-use an existing one?]

4.3.3.6 2.3.6 Languages and Writing Systems

The [textLang](#) element should be used to provide information about the languages used within a manuscript item. It may take the form of a simple note, as in the following example:

```
<textLang mainLang="chu">Old Church Slavonic, written in Cyrillic script.</textLang>
```

For validation and indexing purposes, the mainLang attribute must be supplied: it takes the same range of values as the global xml:lang attribute, on which see further <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH>. When a manuscript item contains material in more than one language, the mainLang attribute should be used only for the chief language. Other languages used may be specified using the otherLangs attribute as in the following example:

```
<textLang mainLang="chu" otherLangs="RUS HEL">Mostly Old Church Slavonic, with some Russian and Greek material</textLang>
```

Since Old Church Slavonic may be written in either Cyrillic or Glagolitic scripts, and even occasionally in both within the same manuscript, it might be preferable to use a more explicit identifier:

```
<textLang mainLang="chu-Cyrs">Old Church Slavonic in Cyrillic script</textLang>
```

The form and scope of language identifiers recommended by these Guidelines is based on the IANA standard described at <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/html/CH.html#CHSH> and should be followed throughout. Where additional detail is needed correctly to describe a language, or to discuss its deployment in a given text, this should be done using the [langUsage](#) element in the TEI Header, within which individual [language](#) elements document the languages used: see <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41>.

Note that the [language](#) element defines a particular combination of human language and writing system. Only one [language](#) element may be supplied for each such combination. Standard TEI practice also allows this element to be referenced by any element using the global `xml:lang` attribute in order to specify the language applicable to the content of that element. For example, assuming that [language](#) elements have been defined with the identifiers `fr` (for French), `la` (for Latin), and `de` (for German), a manuscript description written in French which specifies that a particular manuscript contains predominantly German but also some Latin material, might have a [textLang](#) element like the following:

```
<textLang xml:lang="fr" mainLang="de" otherLangs="la">allemand et latin</textLang>
```

4.3.4 2.4 Physical Description

Under the general heading ‘physical description’ we subsume a large number of different aspects generally regarded as useful in the description of a given manuscript. These include:

- aspects of the form, support, extent, and quire structure of the manuscript object and of the way in which the text is laid out on the page ([2.4.1 Object Description](#));
- the styles of writing, such as the way it is laid out on the page, the styles of writing, decorative features, any musical notation employed and any annotations or marginalia ([2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#));
- and discussion of its binding, seals, and any accompanying material ([2.4.3 Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material](#)).

Most manuscript descriptions touch on several of these categories of information though few include them all, and not all distinguish them as clearly as we propose here. In particular, it is often the case that an existing description will include within a single paragraph, or even sentence, information for which we propose distinct elements. In this case, if rewriting is not an option, the existing prose must be marked up simply as a series of [p](#) elements, directly within the [physDesc](#) element.

The [physDesc](#) element may thus be used in either of two distinct ways. It may contain a series of paragraphs addressing topics listed above and similar ones. Alternatively, it may act as a container for any choice of the more specialized elements described in the remainder of this section, each of which itself contains a series of paragraphs, and may also have more specific attributes. If the two ways are combined in a single description, care should be taken to avoid duplication and all paragraphs of generic description must precede the first of the more specialised elements.

4.3.4.1 2.4.1 Object Description

The [objectDesc](#) element is used to group together those parts of the physical description which relate specifically to the text-bearing object, its format, constitution, layout, etc. The `form` attribute is used to indicate the specific type of writing vehicle being described: it must be supplied, and its value must be one of `codex`, `scroll`, `leaf`, or `other`. If no value is supplied,

the value `codex` will be assumed. The [objectDesc](#) element has two parts: a description of the support, i.e. the physical carrier on which the text is inscribed; and a description of the layout, i.e. the way text is organized on the carrier.

Taking these in turn, the description of the support is tagged using the following elements, each of which is discussed in more detail below:

- [supportDesc](#) (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript.
 material a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the support
- [support](#) contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript.
- [extent](#) describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- [collation](#) contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged.
- [foliation](#) describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex.
- [condition](#) contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript.

Each of these elements contains paragraphs relating to the topic concerned. Within these paragraphs, phrase-level elements (in particular those discussed above at [2.1 Phrase-level Elements](#)), may be used to tag specific terms of interest if so desired.

The form attribute on [supportDesc](#) is used to summarize briefly the materials used for the support. For ENRICH purposes, it must have one of the following values: `perg` (parchment), `chart` (paper), `mixed`, `unknown`.

Here is a simple example:

```
<objectDesc form="codex"> <supportDesc material="mixed">
```

```
<p>Mostly <material>paper</material>, with watermarks
```

```
<watermark>unicorn</watermark> (<ref>Briquet 9993</ref>) and
```

```
<watermark>ox</watermark> (close to <ref>Briquet 2785</ref>). The first and last leaf of
each quire, with the exception of quires xvi and xviii, are constituted by bifolia of
parchment, and all seven miniatures have been painted on inserted singletons of
parchment.</p> </supportDesc></objectDesc>
```

This example combines information which might alternatively be more precisely tagged using the more specific elements described in the following subsections.

4.3.4.1.1 2.4.1.1 Support

The [support](#) element groups together information about the physical carrier. Typically, for western manuscripts, this will entail discussion of the material (parchment, paper, or a combination of the two) written on. For paper, a discussion of any watermarks present may also be useful. If this discussion makes reference to standard catalogues of such items, these may be tagged using the standard [ref](#) element as in the following example:

```
<support> <p>
```

```
<material>Paper</material> with watermark: <watermark>anchor in a circle with star on
top</watermark>, <watermark>countermark B-B with trefoil</watermark> similar to
<ref>Moschin, Anchor N 1680</ref>
```

<date>1570-1585</date>.</p></support>

4.3.4.1.2 2.4.1.2 Extent

The [extent](#) element, defined in the TEI header, may also be used in a manuscript description to specify the number of leaves a manuscript contains, as in the following example:

<extent>ii + 97 + ii</extent>

Information regarding the size of the leaves may be specifically marked using the phrase level [dimensions](#) element, as in the following example, or left as plain prose.

<extent>ii + 321 leaves<dimensions type="leaf" unit="cm">

<height>35</height>

<width>27</width> </dimensions></extent>

4.3.4.1.3 2.4.1.3 Collation

The [collation](#) element should be used to provide a description of a book's current and original structure, that is, the arrangement of its leaves and quires. This information may be conveyed using informal prose, or any appropriate notational convention. Although no specific notation is defined here, an appropriate element to enclose such an expression would be the [formula](#) element, which is provided when the figures module is included in a schema. Here are some examples of different ways of treating collation:

<collation> <p>

<formula>1-3:8, 4:6, 5-13:8</formula> </p></collation> <collation> <p>There are now four gatherings, the first, second and fourth originally consisting of eight leaves, the third of seven. A fifth gathering thought to have followed has left no trace. <list>

<item>Gathering I consists of 7 leaves, a first leaf, originally conjoint with <locus>fol. 7</locus>, having been cut away leaving only a narrow strip along the gutter; the others, <locus>fols 1</locus> and <locus>6</locus>, <locus>2</locus> and <locus>5</locus>, and <locus>3</locus> and <locus>4</locus>, are bifolia.</item>

<item>Gathering II consists of 8 leaves, 4 bifolia.</item>

<item>Gathering III consists of 7 leaves; <locus>fols 16</locus> and <locus>22</locus> are conjoint, the others singletons.</item>

<item>Gathering IV consists of 2 leaves, a bifolium.</item>

</list> </p></collation> <collation> <p>I (1, 2+9, 3+8, 4+7, 5+6, 10); II (11, 12+17, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19).</p></collation> <collation> <p>

<formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text) 7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula> </p></collation>

4.3.4.1.4 2.4.1.4 Foliation

The [foliation](#) element may be used to indicate the scheme, medium or location of folio, page, column, or line numbers written in the manuscript, frequently including a statement about when and, if known, by whom, the numbering was done.

<foliation> <p>Neuere Folierung, die auch das Vorsatzblatt mitgezählt

hat.</p></foliation> <foliation> <p>Folio numbers were added in brown ink by Árni Magnússon ca. 1720-1730 in the upper right corner of all recto-pages.</p></foliation>

Where a manuscript contains traces of more than one foliation, each should be recorded as a distinct [foliation](#) element and optionally given a distinct value for its xml:id attribute. The [locus](#) element discussed in [2.1.5 References to Locations within a Manuscript](#) can then indicate which foliation scheme is being cited by means of its scheme attribute, which points to this identifier:


```
<foliation xml:id="original"> <p>Original foliation in red roman numerals in the middle of
the outer margin of each recto</p></foliation><foliation xml:id="modern"> <p>Foliated in
pencil in the top right corner of each recto page.</p></foliation><!-- ... --
><locus scheme="#modern">ff 1-20</locus>
```

4.3.4.1.5 2.4.1.5 Condition

The [condition](#) element is used to summarize the overall physical state of a manuscript, in particular where such information is not recorded elsewhere in the description. It should not, however, be used to describe changes or repairs to a manuscript, as these are more appropriately described as a part of its custodial history (see [2.6.1.2 Availability and Custodial History](#)). When used solely to describe the condition of the binding, it should appear within the [bindingDesc](#) element ([2.4.3.1 Binding Descriptions](#)).

```
<condition> <p>The manuscript shows signs of damage from water and mould on its
outermost leaves.</p></condition><condition> <p>Despite tears on many of the leaves the
codex is reasonably well preserved. The top and the bottom of f. 1 is damaged, and only a
thin slip is left of the original second leaf (now foliated as 1bis). The lower margin of f. 92
has been cut away. There is a lacuna of one leaf between ff. 193 and 194. The manuscript
ends defectively (there are approximately six leaves missing).</p></condition>
```

4.3.4.1.6 2.4.1.6 Layout Description

The second part of the [objectDesc](#) element is the [layoutDesc](#) element, which is used to describe and document the mise-en-page of the manuscript, that is the way in which text and illumination are arranged on the page, specifying for example the number of written, ruled, or pricked lines and columns per page, size of margins, distinct blocks such as glosses, commentaries, etc. This may be given as a simple series of paragraphs. Alternatively, one or more different layouts may be identified within a single manuscript, each described by its own [layout](#) element.

- [layoutDesc](#) (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript.
- [layout](#) describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques.

Where the [layout](#) element is used, the layout will often be sufficiently regular for the attributes on this element to convey all that is necessary; more usually however a more detailed treatment will be required. The attributes are provided as a convenient shorthand for commonly occurring cases, and should not be used except where the layout is regular. The value NA (not-applicable) should be used for cases where the layout is either very irregular, or where it cannot be characterized simply in terms of lines and columns, for example, where blocks of commentary and text are arranged in a regular but complex pattern on each page

The following examples indicate the range of possibilities:

```
<layout ruledLines="25 32" columns="1"> <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long
lines ruled in lead.</p></layout><layout columns="1" writtenLines="24"> <p>Written in one
column throughout; 24 lines per page.</p></layout><layout columns="1"> <p>Written in a
single column, with 8 lines of text and interlinear glosses in the centre, and up to 26 lines of
gloss in the outer two columns. Double vertical bounding lines ruled in hard point on hair
side. Text lines ruled faintly in lead. Remains of prickings in upper, lower, and outer (for 8
lines of text only) margins.</p></layout>
```

Note that if (as in the last example above) no value is given for the columns attribute, the assumption is that there is a single column of writing on each page.

Where multiple [layout](#) elements are supplied, the scope for each specification can be indicated by means of [locus](#) elements within the content of the element, as in the following example:

```
<layoutDesc> <layout ruledLines="25 32" columns="1">
<p>On <locus from="1r" to="202v">fols 1r-200v</locus> and
<locus from="210r" to="212v">fols 210r-212v</locus> there are    between 25 and 32 ruled
lines.</p> </layout> <layout ruledLines="34 50" columns="1">
<p>On <locus from="203r" to="209v">fols 203r-209v</locus> there are between 34    and
50 ruled lines.</p> </layout></layoutDesc>
```

4.3.4.2 2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations

The second group of elements within a structured physical description concerns aspects of the writing, illumination, or other notation (notably, music) found in a manuscript, including additions made in later hands — the ‘text’, as it were, as opposed to the carrier.

- [handDesc](#) (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript.
 hands specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript
- [handNote](#) (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript.
 script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example secretary, copperplate, Chancery, Italian, etc.
 scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.
- [typeDesc](#) contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source.
- [typeNote](#) describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource.
- [decoDesc](#) (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organised [decoNote](#) elements.
- [decoNote](#) (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components.
- [musicNotation](#) contains description of type of musical notation.
- [additions](#) contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations.

4.3.4.2.1 2.4.2.1 Writing

The [handDesc](#) element can contain a short description of the general characteristics of the writing observed in a manuscript, as in the following example:

```
<handDesc> <p>Written in a <term>late Caroline minuscule</term>; versals in a    form of
<term>rustic capitals</term>; although the marginal and    interlinear gloss is written in
varying shades of ink that are    not those of the main text, text and gloss appear to have been
copied during approximately the same time span.</p></handDesc>
```

Note the use of the [term](#) element to mark specific technical terms within the context of the [handDesc](#) element.

Where several distinct hands have been identified, this fact can be registered by using the `hands` attribute, as in the following example:

```
<handDesc hands="2"> <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise  
unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23  
and 24. Some scholars, notably Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for  
a third hand on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p></handDesc>
```

Where more specific information about one or more of the hands identified is to be recorded, the [handNote](#) element should be used, as in the following example:

```
<handDesc hands="3"> <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-1" scope="minor" script="textualis">  
<p>The first part of the manuscript,  
<locus from="1v" to="72v:4">fols 1v-72v:4</locus>, is written in a practised Icelandic  
Gothic bookhand. This hand is not found  
elsewhere.</p> </handNote> <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-2" scope="major" script="textualis">  
<p>The second part of the manuscript, <locus from="72v:4" to="194v">fols 72v:4-  
194</locus>, is written in a hand contemporary with the first; it can also be found in a  
fragment of <title>Knýtlinga saga</title>,  
<ref>AM 20b II fol.</ref>.</p> </handNote> <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-  
3" scope="minor" script="cursiva">  
<p>The third hand has written the majority of the chapter headings. This hand has been  
identified as the one also found in <ref>AM 221  
fol.</ref>.</p> </handNote></handDesc>
```

As the above example shows, the attributes `script` and `scope` are both required on [handNote](#). For ENRICH purposes, the `script` attribute must take one of the following values: `carolmin`, `textualis`, `cursiva`, `hybrida`, `humbook`, `humcursiva`, or `other`, and the `scope` attribute must take one of the following values: `sole`, `major`, `minor`.

If early printed material or incunables are described using this schema, the [typeDesc](#) and [typeNote](#) elements may be used (in the same way as [handDesc](#) and [handNote](#)) to record information about the typefaces etc. of interest in the source. Both [typeDesc](#) and [handDesc](#) may be supplied, for example in the case where a printed work has been annotated by a number of hands.

The [locus](#) element, discussed in section [2.1.5 References to Locations within a Manuscript](#), may be used to specify which parts of a manuscript are written by a given hand.

In addition, when a full or partial transcription of a manuscript is available in addition to the manuscript description, the [handShift](#) element described in <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH> can be used to link the relevant parts of the transcription to the appropriate [handNote](#) or [typeNote](#) element in the description: for example, at the point in the transcript where the second hand listed above starts (i.e. at folio 72v:4), we might insert `<handShift new="#Eirsp-2"/>`.

No `<typeShift>` element is proposed; if it is felt inappropriate to use [handShift](#) for this purpose, the generic `<mileStone>` may be used.

4.3.4.2.2 2.4.2.2 *Decoration*

It can be difficult to draw a clear distinction between aspects of a manuscript which are purely physical and those which form part of its intellectual content. This is particularly true

of illuminations and other forms of decoration in a manuscript. We propose the following elements for the purpose of delimiting discussion of these aspects within a manuscript description, and for convenience locate them all within the physical description, despite the fact that the illustrative features of a manuscript will in many cases also be seen as constituting part of its intellectual content.

The [decoDesc](#) element may contain simply one or more paragraphs summarizing the overall nature of the decorative features of the manuscript, as in the following example:

```
<decoDesc> <p>The decoration comprises two full page miniatures, perhaps added by the original owner, or slightly later; the original major decoration consists of twenty-three large miniatures, illustrating the divisions of the Passion narrative and the start of the major texts, and the major divisions of the Hours; seventeen smaller miniatures, illustrating the suffrages to saints; and seven historiated initials, illustrating the pericopes and major prayers.</p></decoDesc>
```

Alternatively, it may contain a series of more specific typed [decoNote](#) elements, each summarizing a particular aspect or individual instance of the decoration present, for example the use of miniatures, initials (historiated or otherwise), borders, diagrams, etc. The scope of the description is indicated by the type attribute which, for ENRICH purposes, must take one of the following values: border, diagram, initial, marginal, miniature, mixed, paratext, secondary, other.

Here is a simple example:

```
<decoDesc> <decoNote type="miniature">
<p>One full-page miniature, facing the beginning of the first Penitential Psalm.</p> </decoNote> <decoNote type="initial">
<p>One seven-line historiated initial, commencing the first Penitential Psalm.</p> </decoNote> <decoNote type="initial">
<p>Six four-line decorated initials, commencing the second through the seventh Penitential Psalm.</p> </decoNote> <decoNote type="initial">
<p>Some three hundred two-line versal initials with pen-flourishes, commencing the psalm verses.</p> </decoNote> <decoNote type="border">
<p>Four-sided border decoration surrounding the miniatures and three-sided border decoration accompanying the historiated and decorated initials.</p> </decoNote></decoDesc>
```

Where more exact indexing of the decorative content of a manuscript is required, the standard TEI elements [term](#) or [index](#) may be used within the prose description to supply or delimit appropriate iconographic terms, as in the following example:

```
<decoDesc> <decoNote type="miniature">
<p>Fourteen large miniatures with arched tops, above five lines of text:
<list>
<item>
<locus>fol. 14r</locus>Pericopes. <term>St. John writing on Patmos</term>, with the Eagle holding his ink-pot and pen-case; some flaking of pigment, especially in the sky</item>
<item>
<locus>fol. 26r</locus>Hours of the Virgin, Matins.
<term>Annunciation</term>; Gabriel and the Dove to the right</item>
<item>
<locus>fol. 60r</locus>Prime. <term>Nativity</term>; the
<term>Virgin and Joseph adoring the Child</term>
</item>
```

```
<item>
<locus>fol. 66r</locus>Terce. <term>Annunciation to the      Shepherds</term>, one with
<term>bagpipes</term>
</item><!-- ... -->
</list>
</p> </decoNote></decoDesc>
```

4.3.4.2.3 2.4.2.3 Musical Notation

Where a manuscript contains music, the [musicNotation](#) element may be used to describe the form of notation employed, as in the following example:

```
<musicNotation> <p>Square notation on 4-line red
staves.</p></musicNotation><musicNotation> <p>Neumes in campo aperto of the St. Gall
type.</p></musicNotation>
```

4.3.4.2.4 2.4.2.4 Additions and Marginalia

The [additions](#) element can be used to list or describe any additions to the manuscript, such as marginalia, scribbles, doodles, etc., which are considered to be of interest or importance. Such topics may also be discussed or referenced elsewhere in a description, for example in the [history](#) element, in cases where the marginalia provide evidence of ownership. Some examples follow:

```
<additions> <p>Doodles on most leaves, possibly by children, and often quite
amusing.</p></additions><additions> <p xml:lang="fr">Quelques annotations marginales
des XVIe et XVIIe s.</p></additions><additions> <p>The text of this manuscript is not
interpolated with sentences from Royal decrees promulgated in 1294, 1305 and 1314. In the
margins, however, another somewhat later scribe has added the relevant paragraphs of
these decrees, see pp. 8, 24, 44, 47 etc.</p> <p>As a humorous gesture the scribe in one
opening of the manuscript, pp. 36 and 37, has prolonged the lower stems of one letter f and
five letters þ and has them drizzle down the margin.</p></additions><additions> <p>Spaces
for initials and chapter headings were left by the scribe but not filled in. A later, probably
fifteenth-century, hand has added initials and chapter headings in greenish-coloured ink on
fols <locus>8r</locus>, <locus>8v</locus>, <locus>9r</locus>, <locus>10r</locus> and
<locus>11r</locus>. Although a few of these chapter headings are now rather difficult to
read, most can be made out, e.g. fol. <locus>8rb</locus>
<quote xml:lang="is">floti ast<ex>ri</ex>d<ex>ar</ex>
</quote>; fol. <locus>9rb</locus>
<quote xml:lang="is">v<ex>m</ex> olaf conung</quote>, and fol. <locus>10ra</locus>
<quote xml:lang="is">Gipti<ex>n</ex>g ol<ex>a</ex>fs
k<ex>onun</ex>gs</quote>.</p> <p>The manuscript contains the following
marginalia: <list>
<item>Fol. <locus>4v</locus>, left margin: <quote xml:lang="is">hialmadr <ex>ok</ex>
<lb>brynjadr</lb></quote>, in a fifteenth-century hand, imitating an addition made to the text
by the scribe at this point.</item>
<item>Fol. <locus>5r</locus>, lower margin: <quote xml:lang="is">þ<ex>e</ex>tta
þiki m<ex>er</ex> v<ex>er</ex>a gott blek en<ex>n</ex>da kan<ex>n</ex> ek
icki betr sia</quote>, in a fifteenth-century hand, probably the same as that on the
previous page.</item>
<item>Fol. <locus>9v</locus>, bottom margin: <quote xml:lang="is">þessa bok uilda eg
<sic>gæt</sic> lært med <lb>an Gud gefe myer Gott ad <lb>læra</lb></quote>;
seventeenth-century hand.</item>
```

</list> </p> <p>There are in addition a number of illegible scribbles in a later hand (or hands) on fols <locus>2r</locus>, <locus>3r</locus>, <locus>5v</locus> and <locus>19r</locus>.</p></additions>

4.3.4.3 2.4.3 Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material

The third major component of the physical description relates to supporting but distinct physical components, such as bindings, seals and accompanying material. These may be described using the following specialist elements:

- [bindingDesc](#) (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct [binding](#) elements, one for each binding of the manuscript.
- [binding](#) contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript.
- [condition](#) contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript.
- [sealDesc](#) (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct [seal](#) elements, possibly with additional [decoNotes](#).
- [seal](#) contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript.
- [accMat](#) (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period.

4.3.4.3.1 2.4.3.1 Binding Descriptions

The [bindingDesc](#) element contains a description of the state of the present and former bindings of a manuscript, including information about its material, any distinctive marks, and provenance information. This may be given as a series of paragraphs, if only one binding is being described, or as a series of distinct [binding](#) elements, each describing a distinct binding, where these are separately described. For example:

```
<bindingDesc> <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over 19th-century pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-century brown leather with gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each cover inlaid with a 17th-century oval medallion of red morocco tooled in gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt. Boxed.</p></bindingDesc>
```

Within a binding description, the element [decoNote](#) is available, as an alternative to [p](#), for paragraphs dealing exclusively with information about decorative features of a binding, as in the following example:

```
<binding> <p>Bound, s. XVIII (?), in <material>diced russia leather</material> retaining most of the original 15th century metal ornaments (but with some replacements) as well as the heavy wooden boards.</p> <decoNote>
<p>On each cover: alternating circular stamps of the Holy Monogram, a sunburst, and a flower.</p> </decoNote> <decoNote>
<p>On the cornerpieces, one of which is missing, a rectangular stamp of the Agnus Dei.</p> </decoNote> <p>Rebacked during the 19th century.</p></binding>
```

4.3.4.3.2 2.4.3.2 Seals

The [sealDesc](#) element supplies information about the seal(s) attached to documents to guarantee their integrity, or to show authentication of the issuer or consent of the participants. It may contain one or more paragraphs summarizing the overall nature of the seals, or may contain one or more [seal](#) elements.

```
<sealDesc> <seal n="1" type="pendant" subtype="cauda_duplex">
<p>Round seal of <name type="person">Anders Olufsen</name> in black wax:
</p>
</seal>
</sealDesc>
<bibl>
<ref>DAS 930</ref>
</bibl>. Parchment tag, on which is written:
<quote>pertinere nos predictorum placiti nostri iusticarii precessorum
dif</quote>.</p>
</sealDesc>
<seal n="2" type="pendant" subtype="cauda_duplex">
<p>The seal of <name type="person">Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax:
</p>
</seal>
</sealDesc>
<bibl>
<ref>DAS 1061</ref>
</bibl>. Legend: <quote>S IOHANNES OLAVI</quote>. Parchment tag on which is
written: <quote>Woldorp Iohanne G</quote>.</p>
</sealDesc>
```

4.3.4.3.3 2.4.3.3 Accompanying Material

The circumstance may arise where material not originally part of a manuscript is bound into or otherwise kept with a manuscript. In some cases this material would best be treated in a separate [msPart](#) element (see [2.7 Manuscript Parts](#) below). There are, however, cases where the additional matter is not self-evidently a distinct manuscript: it might, for example, be a set of notes by a later scholar, or a file of correspondence relating to the manuscript. The [accMat](#) element is provided as a holder for this kind of information.

- [accMat](#) (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period.

Here is an example of the use of this element, describing a note by the Icelandic manuscript collector Árni Magnússon which has been bound with the manuscript:

```
<accMat> <p>A slip in Árni Magnússon's hand has been stuck to the pastedown on the
inside front cover; the text reads: <quote xml:lang="is">Þidreks Sögu þessa hefi eg feiged
af Sekreterer Wielandt Anno 1715 i Kaupmanna höfn. Hun er, sem eg sie, Copia af
Austfirda bókinni (Eidagás) en<ex>n</ex> ecki progenies Brædratungu bokarinnar. Og er
þar fyrer eigi i allan<ex>n</ex> máta samhlioda þ<ex>eir</ex>re er Sr Jon Erlendz son
hefer ritad fyrer Mag. Bryniolf. Þesse Þidreks Saga mun vera komin fra Sr Vigfuse á
Helgafelle.</quote> </p>
</accMat>
```

4.3.5 2.5 History

The following elements are used to record information about the history of a manuscript:

- [history](#) groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [origin](#) contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part.
- [provenance](#) contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition.

- [acquisition](#) contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution.

The three components of the [history](#) element all have the same substructure, consisting of one or more paragraphs marked as [p](#) elements. Each of these three elements is also a member of the [att.dataable](#) attribute class, itself a member of the [att.dataable.w3c](#) class, and thus also carries the following optional attributes:

- [att.dataable.w3c](#) provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

<code>notBefore</code>	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
<code>notAfter</code>	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
<code>from</code>	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
<code>to</code>	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
<code>when</code>	supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Information about the origins of the manuscript, its place and date of writing, should be given as one or more paragraphs contained by a single [origin](#) element; following this, any available information on distinct stages in the history of the manuscript before its acquisition by its current holding institution should be included as paragraphs within one or more [provenance](#) elements. Finally, any information specific to the means by which the manuscript was acquired by its present owners should be given as paragraphs within the [acquisition](#) element.

Here is a fairly simple example of the use of this element:

```
<history> <origin>
<p>Written in <origPlace>Durham</origPlace> during
<origDate notBefore="1125" notAfter="1175">the mid-twelfth
century</origDate>.</p> </origin> <provenance>
<p>Recorded in two medieval catalogues of the books belonging to
<name type="org">Durham Priory</name>, made in <date>1391</date> and
<date>1405</date>.</p>
<p>Given to <name type="person">W. Olleyf</name> by
<name type="person">William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)</name> and later belonged to
<name type="person">Henry Dalton</name>, Prior of Holy Island
(<name type="place">Lindisfarne</name>) according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and
5.</p> </provenance> <acquisition>
<p>Presented to <name type="org">Trinity College</name> in
<date>1738</date> by <name type="person">Thomas Gale</name> and his son
<name type="person">Roger</name>.</p> </acquisition></history>
```

Here is a fuller example:

```
<history> <origin notBefore="1225" notAfter="1275">
<p>Written in Spain or Portugal in the middle of the 13th century (the date 1042, given in
a marginal note on f. 97v, cannot be correct.)</p> </origin> <provenance>
<p>The Spanish scholar <name type="person">Benito Arias Montano</name> (1527-
1598) has written his name on f. 97r, and may be presumed to have owned the manuscript.
It came somehow into the possession of <foreign xml:lang="da">etatsråd</foreign>
<name type="person">Holger Parsberg</name> (1636-1692), who has written his name
twice, once on the front pastedown and once on f. 1r, the former dated
```


<date>1680</date> and the latter <date>1682</date>. Following Parsberg's death the manuscript was bought by <foreign>etatsråd</foreign>
<name type="person">Jens Rosenkrantz</name> (1640-1695) when Parsberg's library was auctioned off (23 October 1693).</p> </provenance> <acquisition notBefore="1696" notAfter="1697">
<p>The manuscript was acquired by Árni Magnússon from the estate of Jens Rosenkrantz, presumably at auction (the auction lot number 468 is written in red chalk on the flyleaf), either in 1696 or 97.</p> </acquisition></history>

4.3.6 2.6 Additional information

Three categories of additional information are provided for by the scheme described here, grouped together within the [additional](#) element described in this section.

- [additional](#) groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information.
- [adminInfo](#) (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself.
- [surrogates](#) contains information about any non-digital representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere.
- [listBibl](#) (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

The [surrogates](#) element should not be used to describe digital images of the manuscript since the [facsimile](#) element described in [3 Metadata about digital facsimiles](#) is provided for this purpose.

None of the constituent elements of [additional](#) is required. If any is supplied, it may appear once only; furthermore, the order in which elements are supplied should be as specified above.

4.3.6.1 2.6.1 Administrative information

The [adminInfo](#) element is used to hold information relating to the curation and management of a manuscript. This may be supplied using [note](#) element. Alternatively, different aspects of this information may be presented grouped within one of the following specialized elements:

- [recordHist](#) (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself.
- [availability](#) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.
status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.
- [custodialHist](#) (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events.

The status attribute of [availability](#) must take one of the following values: free, restricted, unknown.

4.3.6.1.1 2.6.1.1 Record History

The [recordHist](#) element may contain either a series of paragraphs or a single [source](#) element. It is used to document the primary source of information for the record containing it, in a similar way to the standard TEI [sourceDesc](#) element within a TEI Header. If the record is a

new one, made without reference to anything other than the manuscript itself, then it may be omitted, or simply contain a [p](#) element, as in the following example:

```
<source> <p>Directly catalogued from the original manuscript.</p></source>
```

Frequently, however, the record will be derived from some previously existing description, which may be specified using the [bibl](#) element, as in the following example:

```
<recordHist> <source>
<p>Information transcribed from <bibl>
<title>The index of      Middle English verse</title>
<biblScope type="pages">123</biblScope>
</bibl>.</p> </source></recordHist>
```

If, as is likely, a full bibliographic description of the source from which cataloguing information was taken is included within the [listBibl](#) element contained by the current [additional](#) element, or elsewhere in the current document, then it need not be repeated here. Instead, it should be referenced using the standard TEI [ref](#) element, as in the following example:

```
<additional> <adminInfo>

<recordHist>

<source>

<p>Information transcribed from

<bibl>

<ref target="#IMEV">IMEV</ref> 123</bibl>.</p>

</source>

</recordHist> </adminInfo> <listBibl>

<bibl xml:id="IMEV">

<author>Carleton Brown</author> and <author>Rossell Hope Robbins</author>

<title level="m">The index of Middle English verse</title>

<pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>

<date>1943</date>

</bibl><!-- other bibliographic records relating to this manuscript here --
> </listBibl></additional>
```

The [change](#) element within the [revisionDesc](#) element of the TEI Header should be used to document the revision history of the record. It should *not* be given within the [recordHist](#) element.

4.3.6.1.2 2.6.1.2 Availability and Custodial History

The [availability](#) element is another element also available in the TEI Header, which should be used here to supply any information concerning access to the current manuscript, such as its physical location (where this is not implicit in its identifier), any restrictions on access, information about copyright, etc.

```
<availability status="restricted"> <p>Viewed by appointment only, to be arranged with
curator.</p></availability><availability status="unknown"> <p>In conservation, Jan. - Mar.,
2002. On loan to the Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, April - July,
```


2002.</p></availability><availability status="restricted"> <p>The manuscript is in poor condition, due to many of the leaves being brittle and fragile and the poor quality of a number of earlier repairs; it should therefore not be used or lent out until it has been conserved.</p></availability>

The [custodialHist](#) record is used to describe the custodial history of a manuscript, recording any significant events noted during the period that it has been located within its holding institution. It may contain either a series of [p](#) elements, or a series of [custEvent](#) elements, each describing a distinct incident or event, further specified by a type attribute, and carrying dating information by virtue of its membership in the [att.dataable](#) class, as noted above.

- [custEvent](#) (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript.

For ENRICH purposes, the values of this attribute must be one of the following: check, conservation, description, exhibition, loan, photography, other.

Here is an example of the use of this element:

```
<custodialHist> <custEvent type="conservation" notBefore="1961-03-01" notAfter="1963-02-28">
<p>Conserved between March 1961 and February 1963 at Birgitte Dalls
Konserveringsværksted.</p> </custEvent> <custEvent type="photography" notBefore="1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-05-30">
<p>Photographed in May 1988 by
AMI/FA.</p> </custEvent> <custEvent type="loan" notBefore="1989-11-13" notAfter="1989-11-13">
<p>Dispatched to Iceland 13 November 1989.</p> </custEvent></custodialHist>
```

4.3.6.2 2.6.2 Surrogates

The [surrogates](#) element is used to provide information about any digital or photographic representations of the manuscript which may exist within the holding institution or elsewhere.

- [surrogates](#) contains information about any non-digital representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere.

The [surrogates](#) element should not be used to repeat information about representations of the manuscript available within published works; this should normally be documented within the [listBibl](#) element within the [additional](#) element. However, it is often also convenient to record information such as negative numbers or digital identifiers for unpublished collections of manuscript images maintained within the holding institution, as well as to provide more detailed descriptive information about the surrogate itself. Such information may be provided as prose paragraphs, within which identifying information about particular surrogates may be presented using the standard TEI [bibl](#) element, as in the following example:

```
<surrogates> <p>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">microfilm (master)</title>
<idno>G.neg. 160</idno> n.d.</bibl>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">microfilm (archive)</title>
<idno>G.pos. 186</idno> n.d.</bibl>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
<idno>AM 795 4to</idno>
```

```

<date when="1999-01-27">27 January 1999</date>
<note>copy of G.pos. 186</note>
</bibl>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
<idno>reg.nr. 75</idno>
<date when="1999-01-25">25 January 1999</date>
<note>photographs of the spine, outside covers, stitching etc.</note>
</bibl> </p></surrogates>

```

Note the use of the specialized form of title (general material designation) to specify the kind of surrogate being documented.

For ENRICH purposes, information about digital images of the manuscript being described should be provided within the [facsimile](#) element discussed in section [3 Metadata about digital facsimiles](#) below rather than within the [surrogates](#) element.

4.3.7 2.7 Manuscript Parts

The [msPart](#) element may be used in cases where what were originally physically separate manuscripts or parts of manuscripts have been bound together and/or share the same call number.

- [msPart](#) (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript.

Since each component of such a composite manuscript will in all likelihood have its own content, physical description, history, and so on, the structure of [msPart](#) is in the main identical to that of [msDesc](#), allowing one to retain the top level of identity ([msIdentifier](#)), but to branch out thereafter into as many parts, or even subparts, as necessary. If the parts of a composite manuscript have their own identifiers, they should be tagged using the [idno](#) element, rather than the [msIdentifier](#) element, as in the following example:

```

<msDesc xml:id="ex3" xml:lang="en"> <msIdentifier>
<settlement>Amiens</settlement>
<repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
<idno>MS 3</idno>
<msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName> </msIdentifier><!-- other elements here -->
</msDesc>
<msPart>
<altIdentifier type="other">
<idno>MS 6</idno>
</altIdentifier><!-- other information specific to this part here --> </msPart> <msPart>
<altIdentifier type="other">
<idno>MS 7</idno>
</altIdentifier><!-- other information specific to this part here --> </msPart> <msPart>
<altIdentifier type="other">
<idno>MS 9</idno>
</altIdentifier><!-- other information specific to this part here --> </msPart><!-- other
msParts here --></msDesc>

```

4.4 3 Metadata about digital facsimiles

The [facsimile](#) element is used to describe the digital images of the manuscript being made available to the ENRICH project. It contains, as a minimum, one [surface](#) element for each distinct page image, which in turn specifies one or more [graphic](#) element. These elements are used as described in the [TEI Guidelines, section 1.1.1](#).

Here is a simple example:

```
<facsimile xml:base="http://www.handrit.org/AM/fol/"> <surface xml:id="LSB-1r" ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
<graphic mimeType="jpeg" xml:id="AM02-5000-1r" url="AM02-5000-1r.jpg"/>
<graphic mimeType="jpeg" url="AM02-5000-1r-thumb.jpg" width="1in" decls="#thumb"/>
<zone ulx="20" uly="20" lrx="70" lry="70">
<desc>Illuminated initial letter M</desc>
<graphic mimeType="jpeg" xml:id="AM02-5000-1r-det" url="AM02-5000-1r-det.jpg"/>
</zone> </surface> <surface start="#LSB-1v" ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
<graphic mimeType="jpeg" xml:id="AM02-5000-1v" url="AM02-5000-1v.jpg"/>
<graphic mimeType="jpeg" url="AM02-5000-1v-thumb.jpg" decls="http://www.enrich.org/imageDescs#thumb"/> </surface></facsimile>
```

The `xml:base` attribute specifies the ‘root URL’, which will be prefixed to all URL values within the child elements of this [facsimile](#).

This example defines only two pages. There are three images associated with the first page, which is represented by the [surface](#) element with unique identifier `LSB-1r`, and two with the second, which has no identifier. Each image is represented by means of a TEI [graphic](#) element.

As well as acting as a container for the various images associated with a page, the [surface](#) element defines an abstract co-ordinate system which may be used when defining additional zones of interest on the page. In this example, the location of an initial letter on the page is defined, since we have a graphic representing this detail. The zone within which the initial letter falls is in the box defined by the co-ordinates (20,20,70,70) within a grid defined by the co-ordinates (0,0,200,300). Thus, if the surface depicted actually measured 200 by 300 mm, the initial letter would occupy a 50 X 50 mm square, with its upper left corner located 20 mm from the left and 20 mm from the top edges of the surface. Note however that the numbers used to express co-ordinates are not measurements in any specific units and should not be used to determine the actual image size, since these may in any case vary greatly: in our example, the first image is a full page scan, while the second is a thumbnail.

The `mimeType` attribute is used to indicate the format of the graphic file itself, and may be any valid MIME type, as defined by the IANA, for example `jpeg`, `png`, `bmp`, `tiff` etc.

The `decls` attribute is used to indicate an external URI from which further metadata applicable to this image may be found. In this case we are assuming that there is a definition which can be used to indicate characteristics of a thumbnail image at the address indicated. Note that this must be given in full, since it would otherwise be interpreted as an address relative to the value of the `xml:base` attribute on the parent [facsimile](#).

[Note: Alternatively, should we invent a type-like attribute which could be validated in the schema?]

The [desc](#) element within a [zone](#) may be used to supply additional information about that zone, in this example to describe what it contains. In the TEI scheme, full documentation of a facsimile and its contents is carried in other parts of the digital document, linked to it in either or both of the following ways:

- the start attribute may be used on a [zone](#) or [surface](#); it points to an element in the transcription the start of which coincides with the zone or surface concerned.
- the facs attribute may be used, for example on the [msContents](#) or [msItem](#) element in a manuscript description, or on any element in the transcription, to point to the [surface](#) bearing the start of the matter in question.

To complete the above example, we might thus expect that the [msDesc](#) for this manuscript will contain something like the following:

```
<msItem> <locus facs="#LSB-1r">ff. 1r-1v</locus> <title>Ludovicuss saga  
Bernharðssonar</title></msItem>
```

Here, the value of the facs attribute is a pointer to the [surface](#) element corresponding with the part of the manuscript in which the [msItem](#) specified begins. If a transcription of this (regrettably nonexistent) manuscript exists, then it might begin as follows:

```
<div facs="#LSB-1r"> <pb n="1r"/> <p>Maðr hét Ludovicus, sonr Bernharðs greifa, er  
kallaðr var loðinbjörn. <!-- rest of text for page one -->  
<pb n="1v" xml:id="LSB-1v"/><!-- text for second page here --> </p></div>
```

pointer to the [surface](#) element corresponding with the part of the manuscript at which the transcribed text begins.

4.5 4 Customization Section

We include in the schema the four basic key TEI modules header, core, tei, and textstructure. We also include five specialized modules: msdescription, linking, namesdates, figures, and transr.

All the elements and attributes defined by these modules are included in the ENRICH schema, with the following modifications. Firstly, several unwanted elements are deleted. Secondly, some optional attributes have been made compulsory, and their range of possible values are constrained. Finally, the content model for a small number of elements has been simplified to remove unwanted alternatives.

The following elements are deleted: <ab>, <alt>, <altGrp>, <analytic>, <appInfo>, <application>, <biblFull>, <biblStruct>, <binaryObject>, <broadcast>, <cRefPattern>, <cell>, <cit>, <climate>, <correction>, <distinct>, <email>, <emph>, <equipment>, <equiv>, <fsdDecl>, <headItem>, <headLabel>, <hyphenation>, <imprint>, <interpretation>, <join>, <joinGrp>, <link>, <linkGrp>, <listNym>, <measure>, <measureGrp>, <meeting>, <mentioned>, <metDecl>, <metSym>, <monogr>, <msItemStruct>, <namespace>, <normalization>, <num>, <nym>, <postBox>, <postCode>, [q](#), <quotation>, <recording>, <recordingStmnt>, <refsDecl>, <rendition>, <row>, <rs>, <said>, <samplingDecl>, <scriptStmnt>, <segmentation>, <series>, <soCalled>, <sp>, <speaker>, <stage>, <state>, <stdVals>, <street>, <table>, <tagUsage>, <tagsDecl>, <teiCorpus>, <terrain>, <time>, <timeline>, <variantEncoding>, <when>.

The att.global.linking class is also deleted, since we anticipate no need for complex pointing mechanisms.

On the [altIdentifier](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: former; partial; internal; system; other

On the [availability](#) element, the status attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: free; unknown; restricted.

On the [biblScope](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: volume; pages.

On the [custEvent](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: check; conservation; description; exhibition; loan; photography; other.

On the [decoNote](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: border; diagram; initial; marginal; miniature; mixed; paratext; secondary; other; illustration; printmark; publishmark; vignette; frieze; map; unspecified.

On the [dimensions](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: leaf; binding; slip; written; boxed; unknown.

On the [gap](#) element, the reason attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: damage; illegible; cancelled; irrelevant.

On all members of the att.dimensions class, the unit attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: chars; leaves; lines; mm; pages; words. The precision attribute is removed.

On the [handNote](#) element, the script attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: carolmin; textualis; cursiva; hybrida; humbook; humcursiva; other.

On the [handNote](#) element, the scope attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: sole; major; minor.

On the [hi](#) element, the rend attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: hyphenated; underline; double-underline; bold; caps; italic; sup; rubric.

On the [layout](#) element, the columns attribute is compulsory, and must take a numeric value.

On the [msDesc](#) element, the xml:id attribute is compulsory, and must be a valid XML identifier.

On the [msDesc](#) element, the xml:lang attribute is compulsory, and must be a valid ISO 639 language code.

On the [name](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: person; place; org; unknown.

On the [objectDesc](#) element, the form attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: codex; leaf; scroll; other.

On the [person](#) element, the sex attribute is compulsory, and must be one of 1 (male), 2 (female), 0 (inapplicable), or 9 (unknown).

On the [region](#) element, the type attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: parish; county; compass; geog; state; unknown.

On the [supplied](#) element, the reason attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: omitted; illegible; damage; unknown.

On the [supportDesc](#) element, the material attribute is compulsory, and must take one of the following values: perg; chart; mixed; unknown.

The following changes do not affect TEI conformance since either they affect only optional parts of TEI content models or they involve additional value constraints for TEI attributes:

- On the [textLang](#) element, the mainLang attribute is compulsory, and must take a legal character identifier as value.

- The optional elements `xml:id` and `xml:lang` are made mandatory for the [msDesc](#) element.
- The content model of the `date` element is changed to include a schematron rule which enforces an appropriate selection of attributes (one of: `when`, `to` and `from`, or `notAfter` and `notBefore`)
- The content model of the `recordHist` element is changed to remove the possibility of including the [change](#) element here.

4.6 Schema enrich: Model classes

4.6.1 model.addressLike

`model.addressLike` groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address.

Module `tei`
Used by [location](#) [model.pPart.data](#)
Members [affiliation](#)

4.6.2 model.biblLike

`model.biblLike` groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

Module `tei`
Used by [event](#) [listBibl](#) [location](#) [org](#) [place](#) [population](#) [relatedItem](#) [sourceDesc](#) [taxonomy](#) [trait](#)
 [model.inter](#)
Members [bibl](#) [msDesc](#)

4.6.3 model.biblPart

`model.biblPart` groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description.

Module `tei`
Used by [bibl](#)
Members [model.imprintPart](#) [[biblScope](#) [distributor](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#)] [model.respLike](#) [[author](#) [editor](#) [respStmt](#)] [edition](#) [extent](#) [idno](#) [msIdentifier](#) [relatedItem](#)

4.6.4 model.choicePart

`model.choicePart` groups elements (other than [choice](#) itself) which can be used within a [choice](#) alternation.

Module `tei`
Used by [choice](#)
Members [abbr](#) [am](#) [corr](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [orig](#) [reg](#) [seg](#) [sic](#) [unclear](#)

4.6.5 model.common

`model.common` groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

Module `tei`
Used by [body](#) [div](#)
Member [model.divPart](#) [[model.lLike](#) [`l`] [model.pLike](#) [`p`] [lg](#)] [model.inter](#) [[model.biblLike](#)
s [[bibl](#) [msDesc](#)] [model.egLike](#) [model.labelLike](#) [[desc](#) [label](#)] [model.listLike](#) [[list](#)

[listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)] [model.qLike](#) [[model.quoteLike](#) [[quote](#)] [q](#)]
[figure](#)]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

4.6.6 model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [model.pPart.data](#)
Members [date](#)

4.6.7 model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [body](#) [div](#) [group](#) [lg](#) [list](#)
Members [model.divBottomPart](#) [model.divWrapper](#) [[docAuthor](#)]

4.6.8 model.divGenLike

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [body](#) [div](#)
Members [divGen](#)

4.6.9 model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [back](#) [body](#) [div](#) [front](#)
Members [div](#)

4.6.10 model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [macro.specialPara](#) [model.common](#)
Members [model.lLike](#) [[l](#)] [model.pLike](#) [[p](#)] [lg](#)

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the [model.inter](#) class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

4.6.11 **model.divTop**

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

Module `tei`

Used by [body div group lg list](#)

Members [model.divTopPart](#) [[model.headLike](#) [[head](#)]] [model.divWrapper](#) [[docAuthor](#)]

4.6.12 **model.divTopPart**

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.divTop](#)

Members [model.headLike](#) [[head](#)]

4.6.13 **model.divWrapper**

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.divTop](#) [model.divBottom](#)

Members [docAuthor](#)

4.6.14 **model.emphLike**

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.highlighted](#) [model.limitedPhrase](#)

Members [foreign](#) [gloss](#) [term](#) [title](#)

4.6.15 **model.encodingPart**

model.encodingPart groups elements which may be used inside [encodingDesc](#) and appear multiple times.

Module `header`

Used by [encodingDesc](#)

Members [charDecl](#) [classDecl](#) [editorialDecl](#) [geoDecl](#) [projectDesc](#)

4.6.16 **model.frontPart**

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

Module `tei`

Used by [back](#) [front](#)

Members [divGen](#) [titlePage](#)

4.6.17 **model.gLike**

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module `tei`

Used by [bibl](#) [date](#) [docImprint](#) [macro paraContent](#) [macro phraseSeq](#) [macro specialPara](#)
[macro.xtext](#)

Members [g](#)

4.6.18 `model.global`

`model.global` groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

Module `tei`

Used by [back](#) [bibl](#) [body](#) [change](#) [date](#) [div](#) [docImprint](#) [docTitle](#) [figure](#) [front](#) [group](#) [lg](#) [list](#)
[msItem](#) [person](#) [text](#) [titlePage](#) [macro paraContent](#) [macro phraseSeq](#)
[macro phraseSeq.limited](#) [macro specialPara](#)

Members [model.global.edit](#) [[addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [gap](#) [space](#)] [model.global.meta](#) [[index](#)]
[model.milestoneLike](#) [[anchor](#) [cb](#) [fw](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [pb](#)] [model.noteLike](#) [[note](#)]

4.6.19 `model.global.edit`

`model.global.edit` groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.global](#)

Members [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [gap](#) [space](#)

4.6.20 `model.global.meta`

`model.global.meta` groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.global](#)

Members [index](#)

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

4.6.21 `model.glossLike`

`model.glossLike` groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

Module `tei`

Used by [category](#) [char](#) [gap](#) [glyph](#) [surface](#) [taxonomy](#) [zone](#)

Members [desc](#) [gloss](#)

4.6.22 `model.graphicLike`

`model.graphicLike` groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.

Module `tei`
Used by [char](#) [facsimile](#) [figure](#) [formula](#) [glyph](#) [surface](#) [zone](#) [model.phrase](#)
Members [formula](#) [graphic](#)

4.6.23 `model.headLike`

`model.headLike` groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module `tei`
Used by [divGen](#) [event](#) [figure](#) [listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [msDesc](#) [msPart](#) [org](#) [place](#) [population](#) [trait](#) [model.divTopPart](#)
Members [head](#)

4.6.24 `model.headerPart`

`model.headerPart` groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

Module `header`
Used by [teiHeader](#)
Members [encodingDesc](#) [profileDesc](#)

4.6.25 `model.hiLike`

`model.hiLike` groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed.

Module `tei`
Used by [model.highlighted](#)
Members [hi](#)

4.6.26 `model.highlighted`

`model.highlighted` groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.

Module `tei`
Used by [bibl](#) [model.phrase](#)
Members [model.emphLike](#) [[foreign](#) [gloss](#) [term](#) [title](#)] [model.hiLike](#) [[hi](#)]

4.6.27 `model.imprintPart`

`model.imprintPart` groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.

Module `tei`
Used by [model.biblPart](#)
Members [biblScope](#) [distributor](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#)

4.6.28 `model.inter`

`model.inter` groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [change](#) [macro.limitedContent](#) [macro.paraContent](#) [macro.specialPara](#)
[model.common](#)
[model.biblLike](#) [[bibl](#) [msDesc](#)] [model.egLike](#) [model.labelLike](#) [[desc](#) [label](#)]
Members [model.listLike](#) [[list](#) [listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)] [model.qLike](#) [
[model.quoteLike](#) [[quote](#)] [q](#)] [figure](#)

4.6.29 **model.ILike**

`model.ILike` groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module `tei`
Used by [lg](#) [model.divPart](#)
Members [l](#)

4.6.30 **model.labelLike**

`model.labelLike` groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module `tei`
Used by [event](#) [location](#) [org](#) [place](#) [population](#) [trait](#) [model.inter](#)
Members [desc](#) [label](#)

4.6.31 **model.limitedPhrase**

`model.limitedPhrase` groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources.

Module `tei`
Used by [catDesc](#) [change](#) [macro.limitedContent](#) [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#)
[model.emphLike](#) [[foreign](#) [gloss](#) [term](#) [title](#)] [model.pPart.data](#) [
[model.addressLike](#) [[affiliation](#)] [model.dateLike](#) [[date](#)] [model.measureLike](#)
[[depth](#) [geo](#) [height](#) [width](#)] [model.nameLike](#) [[model.nameLike.agent](#) [[name](#)
[orgName](#) [persName](#)] [model.offsetLike](#) [[geogFeat](#) [offset](#)]
Members [model.persNamePart](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [nameLink](#) [roleName](#)
[surname](#)] [model.placeStateLike](#) [[model.placeNamePart](#) [[bloc](#) [country](#)
[district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)]]]] [model.pPart.editorial](#)
[[abbr](#) [am](#) [choice](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [subst](#)] [model.pPart.msdesc](#) [[catchwords](#)
[dimensions](#) [handShift](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#)
[signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#)] [model.ptrLike](#) [[ptr](#) [ref](#)]

4.6.32 **model.listLike**

`model.listLike` groups list-like elements.

Module `tei`
Used by [sourceDesc](#) [model.inter](#)
Members [list](#) [listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#)
[listPlace](#)

4.6.33 **model.measureLike**

`model.measureLike` groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [location](#) [model.pPart.data](#)
Members [depth](#) [geo](#) [height](#) [width](#)

4.6.34 **model.milestoneLike**

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [model.global](#)
Members [anchor](#) [cb](#) [fw](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [pb](#)

4.6.35 **model.msItemPart**

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [msItem](#)
Members [model.quoteLike](#) [[quote](#)] [model.respLike](#) [[author](#) [editor](#) [respStmt](#)] [bibl](#) [colophon](#)
[decoNote](#) [explicit](#) [filiation](#) [finalRubric](#) [incipit](#) [listBibl](#) [msItem](#) [rubric](#) [textLang](#) [title](#)

4.6.36 **model.nameLike**

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [org](#) [model.pPart.data](#)
Members [model.nameLike.agent](#) [[name](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#)] [model.offsetLike](#) [[geogFeat](#)
[offset](#)] [model.persNamePart](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [nameLink](#) [roleName](#)
[surname](#)] [model.placeStateLike](#) [[model.placeNamePart](#) [[bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#)
[geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)]]
Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses,
statements of responsibility, etc.

4.6.37 **model.nameLike.agent**

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [respStmt](#) [model.nameLike](#)
Members [name](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#)

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

4.6.38 **model.noteLike**

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [adminInfo](#) [char](#) [event](#) [glyph](#) [location](#) [notesStmt](#) [org](#) [place](#) [population](#) [trait](#)
[model.global](#)
Members [note](#)

4.6.39 **model.offsetLike**

model.offsetLike groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name.

Module `tei`

Used by [location](#) [model.nameLike](#)

Members [geogFeat](#) [offset](#)

4.6.40 **model.pLike**

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [availability](#) [binding](#) [bindingDesc](#) [custodialHist](#) [decoDesc](#) [editionStmt](#) [editorialDecl](#) [encodingDesc](#) [event](#) [figure](#) [handDesc](#) [history](#) [langKnowledge](#) [layoutDesc](#) [msContents](#) [msDesc](#) [msItem](#) [msPart](#) [objectDesc](#) [org](#) [person](#) [personGrp](#) [physDesc](#) [place](#) [population](#) [projectDesc](#) [publicationStmt](#) [recordHist](#) [relationGrp](#) [seal](#) [sealDesc](#) [seriesStmt](#) [sourceDesc](#) [supportDesc](#) [trait](#) [typeDesc](#) [model.divPart](#)

Members [p](#)

4.6.41 **model.pLike.front**

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

Module `tei`

Used by [back](#) [front](#)

Members [docAuthor](#) [docEdition](#) [docImprint](#) [docTitle](#) [head](#) [titlePart](#)

4.6.42 **model.pPart.data**

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

Module `tei`

Used by [bibl](#) [model.phrase](#) [model.limitedPhrase](#)

Members [model.addressLike](#) [[affiliation](#)] [model.dateLike](#) [[date](#)] [model.measureLike](#) [[depth](#) [geo](#) [height](#) [width](#)] [model.nameLike](#) [[model.nameLike.agent](#) [[name](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#)] [model.offsetLike](#) [[geogFeat](#) [offset](#)] [model.persNamePart](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [nameLink](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)] [model.placeStateLike](#) [[model.placeNamePart](#) [[bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)]]]

4.6.43 **model.pPart.edit**

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

Module `tei`

Used by [bibl](#) [model.phrase](#)

[model.pPart.editorial](#) [[abbr](#) [am](#) [choice](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [subst](#)]

Members [model.pPart.transcriptional](#) [[add](#) [corr](#) [damage](#) [del](#) [orig](#) [reg](#) [restore](#) [sic](#) [supplied](#) [unclear](#)]

4.6.44 **model.pPart.editorial**

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.

Module tei

Used by [model.pPart.edit](#) [model.limitedPhrase](#)

Members [abbr](#) [am](#) [choice](#) [ex](#) [expansion](#) [subst](#)

4.6.45 **model.pPart.msdesc**

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description.

Module tei

Used by [model.phrase](#) [model.limitedPhrase](#)

Members [catchwords](#) [dimensions](#) [handShift](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#)
[secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#)

4.6.46 **model.pPart.transcriptional**

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.

Module tei

Used by [subst](#) [model.pPart.edit](#)

Members [add](#) [corr](#) [damage](#) [del](#) [orig](#) [reg](#) [restore](#) [sic](#) [supplied](#) [unclear](#)

4.6.47 **model.persEventLike**

model.persEventLike groups elements describing specific events in a person's history, for example birth, marriage, or appointment.

Module tei

Used by [model.personPart](#)

Members [birth](#) [death](#) [event](#)

Note These are not characteristics of an individual, but often cause an individual to gain such characteristics, or to enter a new state.

4.6.48 **model.persNamePart**

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name.

Module namesdates

Used by [model.nameLike](#)

Members [addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [nameLink](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)

4.6.49 **model.persStateLike**

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

Module tei

Used by [model.personPart](#)

Members [affiliation](#) [education](#) [floruit](#) [occupation](#) [persName](#) [residence](#)

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

4.6.50 **model.persTraitLike**

model.persTraitLike groups elements describing generally unchanging physical or socially-constructed characteristics of a person, for example hair-colour, ethnicity, or sex.

Module `tei`

Used by [model.personPart](#)

Members [age](#) [faith](#) [langKnowledge](#) [nationality](#) [sex](#) [socecStatus](#) [trait](#)

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically independent of their volition or action.

4.6.51 **model.personLike**

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module `tei`

Used by [listPerson](#) [org](#)

Members [org](#) [person](#) [personGrp](#)

4.6.52 **model.personPart**

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

Module `tei`

Used by [person](#) [personGrp](#)

Members [model.persEventLike](#) [[birth](#) [death](#) [event](#)] [model.persStateLike](#) [[affiliation](#) [education](#) [floruit](#) [occupation](#) [persName](#) [residence](#)] [model.persTraitLike](#) [[age](#) [faith](#) [langKnowledge](#) [nationality](#) [sex](#) [socecStatus](#) [trait](#)] [bibl](#)

4.6.53 **model.phrase**

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

Module `tei`

Used by [date](#) [docImprint](#) [macro.paraContent](#) [macro.phraseSeq](#) [macro.specialPara](#) [model.graphicLike](#) [[formula](#) [graphic](#)] [model.highlighted](#) [[model.emphLike](#) [[foreign](#) [gloss](#) [term](#) [title](#)] [model.hiLike](#) [[hi](#)]] [model.pPart.data](#) [[model.addressLike](#) [[affiliation](#)] [model.dateLike](#) [[date](#)] [model.measureLike](#) [[depth](#) [geo](#) [height](#) [width](#)] [model.nameLike](#) [[model.nameLike.agent](#) [[name](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#)] [model.offsetLike](#) [[geogFeat](#) [offset](#)] [model.persNamePart](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [nameLink](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)] [model.placeStateLike](#) [[model.placeNamePart](#) [[bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)]]] [model.pPart.edit](#) [[model.pPart.editorial](#) [[abbr](#) [am](#) [choice](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [subst](#)] [model.pPart.transcriptional](#) [[add](#) [corr](#) [damage](#) [del](#) [orig](#) [reg](#) [restore](#) [sic](#) [supplied](#) [unclear](#)]] [model.pPart.msdesc](#) [[catchwords](#) [dimensions](#) [handShift](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#)] [model.ptrLike](#) [[ptr](#) [ref](#)] [model.segLike](#) [[seg](#)]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class `inter` or

chunk. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

4.6.54 model.physDescPart

model.physDescPart groups specialised elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

Module `tei`

Used by

Members [accMat](#) [additions](#) [bindingDesc](#) [decoDesc](#) [handDesc](#) [musicNotation](#) [objectDesc](#)
[sealDesc](#) [typeDesc](#)

4.6.55 model.placeEventLike

model.placeEventLike groups elements which describe events at or affecting a place.

Module `tei`

Used by [place](#)

Members [event](#)

4.6.56 model.placeLike

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

Module `tei`

Used by [listPlace](#) [org](#) [place](#)

Members [place](#)

4.6.57 model.placeNamePart

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name.

Module `tei`

Used by [location](#) [model.placeStateLike](#)

Members [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[settlement](#)

4.6.58 model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module `tei`

Used by [place](#) [model.nameLike](#)

Members [model.placeNamePart](#) [[bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[settlement](#)]

4.6.59 model.placeTraitLike

model.placeTraitLike groups elements which describe unchanging traits of a place.

Module	tei
Used by	place
Members	location population trait

4.6.60 **model.profileDescPart**

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside [profileDesc](#) and appear multiple times.

Module	header
Used by	profileDesc
Members	handNotes langUsage textClass

4.6.61 **model.ptrLike**

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.

Module	tei
Used by	bibl relatedItem model.phrase model.limitedPhrase
Members	ptr ref

4.6.62 **model.publicationStmtPart**

model.publicationStmtPart groups elements which may appear within the [publicationStmt](#) element of the TEI Header.

Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	authority availability date distributor idno pubPlace publisher

4.6.63 **model.qLike**

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements.

Module	tei
Used by	model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike [quote] q

4.6.64 **model.quoteLike**

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module	tei
Used by	model.qLike model.msItemPart
Members	quote

4.6.65 **model.resourceLike**

model.resourceLike groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document.

Module	tei
--------	-----

Used by [TEI](#)
Members [facsimile](#)

4.6.66 **model.respLike**

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [model.biblPart](#) [model.msItemPart](#)
Members [author](#) [editor](#) [respStmt](#)

4.6.67 **model.segLike**

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [bibl](#) [model.phrase](#)
Members [seg](#)

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the [encodingDesc](#) within the associated TEI header.

4.6.68 **model.titlepagePart**

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as [docTitle](#), [docAuthor](#), [docImprint](#), or <epigraph>.

Module [tei](#)
Used by [msItem](#) [titlePage](#)
Members [docAuthor](#) [docEdition](#) [docImprint](#) [docTitle](#) [figure](#) [graphic](#) [titlePart](#)

4.7 **Schema enrich: Attribute classes**

4.7.1 **att.ascribed**

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

Module [tei](#)
Members [change](#) [q](#)

In addition to global attributes
who
indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.
Attributes Status
Optional
Datatype
1–∞ occurrences of [xsd:anyURI](#) separated by whitespace
Values
For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant

group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified [person](#) element.

4.7.2 att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module [tei](#)

Members [att.naming](#) [[att.personal](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)] [affiliation](#) [birth](#) [bloc](#) [collection](#) [country](#) [death](#) [district](#) [education](#) [event](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [institution](#) [name](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [pubPlace](#) [region](#) [relation](#) [repository](#) [residence](#) [settlement](#) [socecStatus](#) [trait](#)] [author](#) [docAuthor](#) [docTitle](#) [resp](#) [title](#)

In addition to global attributes

key

provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status

Optional

Datatype

string

Values

any string of Unicode characters

Note

Attributes The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

ref

(reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of [xsd:anyURI](#) separated by whitespace

Note

The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

4.7.3 att.coordinated

att.coordinated elements which can be positioned within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module [transcr](#)

Members [surface](#) [zone](#)

In addition to global attributes

ulx

Attributes gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

uly

gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

lrx

gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

lry

gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

4.7.4 att.damaged

att.damaged provides attributes describing the nature of any physical damage affecting a reading.

Module `tei`

Members [damage](#) [damageSpan](#)

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dimensions](#) (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@scope`)

hand

In the case of damage (deliberate defacement, inking out, etc.) assignable to a distinct hand, signifies the hand responsible for the damage.

Attributes

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section [??](#)).

agent

categorizes the cause of the damage,

if it can be identified.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

rubbing

damage results from rubbing of the leaf
edges

mildew

damage results from mildew on the leaf
surface

smoke

damage results from smoke

degree

Signifies the degree of damage
according to a convenient scale. The
[damage](#) tag with the degree attribute
should only be used where the text
may be read with some confidence;
text supplied from other sources
should be tagged as [supplied](#).

Status

Optional

Datatype

Values

an alphanumeric categorization of
the degree of damage, as 0.4.

Note

The [damage](#) tag with the degree
attribute should only be used where
the text may be read with confidence
despite the damage. It is appropriate
where it is desired to record the fact
of damage, though this has not
affected the readability of the text (as
may be the case with weathered
inscriptional materials). Where the
damage has rendered the text more
or less illegible either the [unclear](#) tag
(for partial illegibility) or the [gap](#) tag
(for complete illegibility, with no
text supplied) should be used, with
the information concerning the
damage given in the attribute values
of these tags. See section [??](#) for
discussion of the use of these tags in
particular circumstances.

group

assigns an arbitrary number to each
stretch of damage regarded as
forming part of the same physical
phenomenon.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger

4.7.5 att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

Module tei

Members [acquisition](#) [affiliation](#) [age](#) [binding](#) [birth](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [custEvent](#) [date](#) [death](#) [district](#)
[education](#) [event](#) [faith](#) [floruit](#) [geogFeat](#) [langKnowledge](#) [langKnown](#) [location](#)
[nationality](#) [occupation](#) [orgName](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [origin](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#)
[population](#) [provenance](#) [region](#) [relation](#) [residence](#) [seal](#) [settlement](#) [sex](#) [socecStatus](#)
[stamp](#) [trait](#)

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)

Note This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the [att.datable.w3c](#) class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

4.7.6 att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Members [att.datable](#) [[acquisition](#) [affiliation](#) [age](#) [binding](#) [birth](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [custEvent](#) [date](#) [death](#) [district](#) [education](#) [event](#) [faith](#) [floruit](#) [geogFeat](#) [langKnowledge](#) [langKnown](#) [location](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [orgName](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [origin](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [provenance](#) [region](#) [relation](#) [residence](#) [seal](#) [settlement](#) [sex](#) [socecStatus](#) [stamp](#) [trait](#)]

Attributes In addition to global attributes
period
supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

when

supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML
Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date><date when="1996-09-
24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the
morning</date><time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
pm</time><time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38
seconds</time><date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date><date when="--
06-12">June 12th</date><date when="---01">the first of the
month</date><date when="--
08">August</date><date when="2006">MMVI</date><date when="0056">56
AD</date><date when="-0056">56 BC</date>

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="Julian" when="1632-06-
06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

<opener> <dateline>

<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>

<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date> </dateline> <salute>To
Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time></opener>

Note

The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the
date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats
specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the
Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is
yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used.
For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent
the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

notBefore

specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-
dd.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML
Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

notAfter

specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML
Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

from

indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML
Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

to

indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML
Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

4.7.7 att.declarable

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose decls attribute.

Module tei

Members [availability](#) [bibl](#) [editorialDecl](#) [geoDecl](#) [langUsage](#) [listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#)
[listPlace](#) [projectDesc](#) [sourceDesc](#) [textClass](#)

In addition to global attributes

default

indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

Status

Attributes Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:boolean

Legal values are:

true

This element is selected if its parent is selected

false

This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default]

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [??](#). Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of true.

4.7.8 att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element.

Module `tei`

Members [back](#) [body](#) [div](#) [facsimile](#) [front](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [group](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [surface](#) [term](#) [text](#)

In addition to global attributes

`decls`

identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

Attributes Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

must identify a set of declarable elements of different types.

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [??](#).

4.7.9 att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module `tei`

Members [att.damaged](#) [[damage](#) [damageSpan](#)] [att.editLike](#) [[att.transcriptional](#) [[add](#) [addSpan](#) [del](#) [delSpan](#) [restore](#) [subst](#)] [affiliation](#) [age](#) [am](#) [birth](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [death](#) [education](#) [event](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [faith](#) [floruit](#) [gap](#) [langKnowledge](#) [langKnown](#) [location](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [org](#) [orgName](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [origin](#) [persName](#) [person](#) [place](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [reg](#) [relation](#) [residence](#) [sex](#) [socecStatus](#) [supplied](#) [trait](#) [unclear](#)] [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [space](#) [width](#)

In addition to global attributes

`unit`

names the unit used for the measurement

Status

Optional

Attributes Datatype

`xsd:Name`

Legal values are:

`cm`

`mm`

[Default]

`in`

lines
chars

quantity
specifies the length in the units specified

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

extent

indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary
combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }separated by
whitespace

Values

any measurement phrase, e.g. 25 letters, 2 × 3 inches.

<gap extent="5 words"/><height extent="2 ft 8 in"/>

atLeast

gives a minimum estimated value for the measurement.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

atMost

gives a maximum estimated value for the measurement.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

min

where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, supplies the
minimum value observed.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

max

where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, supplies the
maximum value observed.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | xsd:decimal

scope

where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the
applicability of this measurement.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

all

measurement applies to all instances.

most

measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range

measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

4.7.10 att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

Module **tei**

Members [div lg](#)

In addition to global attributes

org

(organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status

Optional

Legal values are:

composite

composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

uniform

uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.

Attributes [Default]

sample

indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status

Optional

Legal values are:

initial

division lacks material present at end in source.

medial

division lacks material at start and end.

final

division lacks material at start.

unknown

position of sampled material within original
unknown.
complete
division is not a sample. [Default]

part
specifies whether or not the division is
fragmented by some other structural
element, for example a speech which is
divided between two or more verse
stanzas.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are:

Y

(yes) the division is incomplete in some
respect

N

(no) either the division is complete, or no
claim is made as to its completeness.

[Default]

I

(initial) the initial part of an incomplete
division

M

(medial) a medial part of an incomplete
division

F

(final) the final part of an incomplete division

Note

The values I, M, or F should be used
only where it is clear how the division is
to be reconstituted.

4.7.11 **att.editLike**

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of a encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

Module **tei**

Members [att.transcriptional](#) [[add](#) [addSpan](#) [del](#) [delSpan](#) [restore](#) [subst](#)] [affiliation](#) [age](#) [am](#)
[birth](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [death](#) [education](#) [event](#) [ex](#) [expan](#) [faith](#) [floruit](#) [gap](#) [langKnowledge](#)
[langKnown](#) [location](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [org](#) [orgName](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#)
[origin](#) [persName](#) [person](#) [place](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [reg](#) [relation](#) [residence](#) [sex](#)
[socecStatus](#) [supplied](#) [trait](#) [unclear](#)

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dimensions](#) (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)

cert

Attributes (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status

Optional

Datatype

"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"

resp

(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

A pointer to an element in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

evidence

indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status

Optional

Datatype

`xsd:Name`

Suggested values include:

internal

there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external

there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture

the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

source

contains a list of one or more pointers indicating the sources which support the given reading.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the `xml:id` attribute on a `<witness>` or [msDesc](#) element elsewhere in the document.

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

4.7.12 att.global

`att.global` provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module `tei`

Members

	<p>In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.global.facs (@facs)</p> <p>xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype xsd:ID Values any valid XML identifier.</p> <p>Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section ??.</p>
	<p>n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" }separated by whitespace Values any string of characters; often, but not necessarily, numeric.</p> <p>Note The n attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.</p>
Attributes	<p>xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype xsd:language Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-) it should, and if not it may, match the value of an ident attribute of a language element supplied in the TEI Header of the current document.</p> <p>Note If no value is specified for xml:lang, the xml:lang value for the immediately enclosing element is inherited; for this reason, a value should always be specified on the outermost element (TEI).</p> <p>rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" }separated</p>

by whitespace

Values

any string of characters; if the typographic rendition of a text is to be systematically recorded, a systematic set of values for the rend attribute should be defined.

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"> <lb/>To  
The<lb/>Duchesse<lb/>of<lb/>Newcastle,<lb/>On  
Her<lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.</head>
```

Note

These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines.

xml:base

provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

any syntactically valid URI reference.

```
<div type="bibl"> <head>Bibliography</head> <listBibl xml:base="http://ww  
w.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">  
<bibl n="1">  
<author>  
<name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>  
</author>  
<ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">  
<title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>  
</ref>  
</bibl>  
<bibl n="2">  
<author>  
<name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>  
</author>  
<ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">  
<title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>  
</ref>  
</bibl>  
<bibl n="3">  
<author>  
<name>Taylor, Jane</name>  
</author>  
<ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">  
<title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>  
</ref>  
</bibl> </listBibl></div>
```

4.7.13 **att.global.facs**

att.global.facs groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it.

Module transcr

Members [att.global](#)

In addition to global attributes

facs

(facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of **xsd:anyURI** separated by whitespace

Values

one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

4.7.14 **att.handFeatures**

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written.

Module tei

Members [handNote](#) [handShift](#) [typeNote](#)

In addition to global attributes

scribe

gives a standard name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Values

Any name

script

characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example secretary, copperplate, Chancery, Italian, etc.

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of **xsd:Name** separated by whitespace

medium

describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. brown, or other writing medium, e.g.

pencil

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

scope

specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status

Optional

Legal values are:

sole

only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major

this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor

this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

4.7.15 **att.internetMedia**

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module `tei`

Members [graphic](#)

In addition to global attributes

`contentType`

(MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Attributes

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }

Values

The value should be a valid MIME media type

Note

This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in [RFC 2046](#). The [list of types](#) is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

4.7.16 **att.msExcerpt**

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof.

Module `msdescription`

Members [explicit](#) [incipit](#) [msContents](#) [msItem](#) [quote](#)

In addition to global attributes

`defective`

indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.

Attributes

Status

Optional

Datatype

`xsd:boolean` | "unknown" | "inapplicable"

Note In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

4.7.17 **att.naming**

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

Module **tei**

Members [att.personal](#) [[addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)] [affiliation](#) [birth](#) [bloc](#) [collection](#) [country](#) [death](#) [district](#) [education](#) [event](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [institution](#) [name](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [pubPlace](#) [region](#) [relation](#) [repository](#) [residence](#) [settlement](#) [socecStatus](#) [trait](#)

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)

nymRef

(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status

Attributes Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

any valid URI

Note

The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

4.7.18 **att.personal**

att.personal (attributes for components of personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a personal name.

Module **tei**

Members [addName](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [roleName](#) [surname](#)

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

full

indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Attributes

Status

Optional

Legal values are:

yes

the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]

abb
(abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.
init
(initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

sort
specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others
within the personal name.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Values

A positive number indicating the sort order.

4.7.19 **att.placement**

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

Module **tei**

Members [add](#) [addSpan](#) [figure](#) [fw](#) [note](#)

In addition to global attributes

place

Status

Recommended

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

infralinear

below the line

margin-bot

(bottom margin) in the bottom margin

margin-left

(left margin) in the left margin

margin-right

(right margin) in the right margin

Attributes

margin-top

(top margin) in the top margin

opposite

on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf

on the other side of the leaf

supralinear

above the line

verso

on verso of the sheet or page

app

(apparatus) note appears in the apparatus at the foot of the page.

end

note appears at end of chapter or volume.

foot

note appears at foot of page.

inline

note appears as a marked paragraph in the body of the text.

interlinear
note appears between lines of the text; a less precise form of either infralinear or supralinear.
inline
addition is made in a space left in the witness by an earlier scribe.
mixed
one or more of the other values

4.7.20 **att.pointing**

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

Module linking

Members [ptr](#) [ref](#)

In addition to global attributes

type

categorizes the pointer in some respect, using any convenient set of categories.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Values

The type should indicate the intended function of the pointer, or the rhetorical relationship between its source and target.

evaluate

specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status

Attributes Optional

Legal values are:

all

if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one

if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none

no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note

If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

4.7.21 **att.segLike**

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Members [seg](#)

Attributes In addition to global attributes

type
characterizes the type of segment.

Status
Optional
Datatype
xsd:Name
Values
For a <cl> may take values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. For a <phr> or <w>, values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc., may be used. For an <m> element, values such as clitic, prefix, stem will be more appropriate. For a <c> element, values such as letter, punctuation, digit may be used.

function
characterizes the function of the segment.

Status
Optional
Datatype
xsd:Name
Values
For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

part
specifies whether or not the segment is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a clause which is divided between two or more sentences.

Status
Mandatory when applicable
Legal values are:
Y
(yes) the segment is incomplete in some respect
N
(no) either the segment is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness
[Default]
I
(initial) the initial part of an incomplete segment
M
(medial) a medial part of an incomplete segment
F
(final) the final part of an incomplete segment

Note
The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

4.7.22 **att.spanning**

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it.

Module tei

Members [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [index](#)

Attributes In addition to global attributes
spanTo

indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

points to an element following this one in the current document.

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element (if any) to the end of the content of the

Note element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element.

4.7.23 att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

Module tei

Members [add](#) [addSpan](#) [del](#) [delSpan](#) [restore](#) [subst](#)

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

hand

signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

must refer to a [handNote](#) element, typically declared in the document header (see section [??](#)).

status

Attributes indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

duplicate

all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial

part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart

some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd

some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should

not be deleted.
shortStart
some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
shortEnd
some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
partial
some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
unremarkable
the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

Note

Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

seq

(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger

4.7.24 **att.translatable**

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module `tei`

Members [desc](#) [gloss](#)

In addition to global attributes

version

specifies the version name or number of the source from which the translated version was derived

Attributes `Status`

Optional

Datatype

token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }

Note

The version may be a number, a letter, or a date

4.7.25 **att.typed**

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module `tei`

Members [accMat](#) [add](#) [addName](#) [addSpan](#) [altIdentifier](#) [anchor](#) [bibl](#) [bloc](#) [cb](#) [charProp](#) [corr](#) [country](#) [custEvent](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [date](#) [decoNote](#) [del](#) [delSpan](#) [district](#) [div](#)

[event](#) [explicit](#) [filiation](#) [finalRubric](#) [forename](#) [g](#) [genName](#) [geogFeat](#) [gloss](#) [head](#)
[incipit](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [listBibl](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [location](#) [mapping](#) [milestone](#)
[msName](#) [name](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [org](#) [orgName](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [pb](#) [persName](#)
[place](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [quote](#) [reg](#) [region](#) [relatedItem](#) [relationGrp](#) [restore](#)
[roleName](#) [rubric](#) [seal](#) [settlement](#) [stamp](#) [surname](#) [term](#) [text](#) [trait](#)

In addition to global attributes

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Attributes subtype

provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Note

The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element, additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Note

The typology used may be formally defined using the <classification> element of the [encodingDesc](#) within the associated TEI header, or as a list within one of the components of the [encodingDesc](#) element, or informally as descriptive prose within the [encodingDesc](#) element.

4.8 Schema enrich: Macros

4.8.1 macro.anyXML

macro.anyXML defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted

Module `tei`

Used by [macro.anyXML](#)
macro.anyXML =
element

Declaration

```
{
  ( attribute * - (xml:id | xml:lang) { text } | text |
  macro.anyXML ) *
}
```

4.8.2 macro.limitedContent

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials.

Module `tei`

Used by [desc](#) [figDesc](#)

Declaration `macro.limitedContent = (text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter)*`

4.8.3 macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [add](#) [corr](#) [damage](#) [del](#) [docEdition](#) [head](#) [hi](#) [l](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [restore](#) [seg](#) [sic](#) [supplied](#) [title](#) [titlePart](#) [unclear](#)

Declaration `macro.paraContent = (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global)*`

4.8.4 macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [abbr](#) [addName](#) [addrLine](#) [affiliation](#) [author](#) [biblScope](#) [birth](#) [bloc](#) [catchwords](#) [colophon](#) [country](#) [death](#) [distributor](#) [district](#) [docAuthor](#) [edition](#) [editor](#) [education](#) [expan](#) [explicit](#) [extent](#) [faith](#) [finalRubric](#) [floruit](#) [foreign](#) [forename](#) [fw](#) [genName](#) [geoDecl](#) [geogName](#) [gloss](#) [heraldry](#) [incipit](#) [label](#) [material](#) [name](#) [nameLink](#) [nationality](#) [occupation](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#) [region](#) [residence](#) [roleName](#) [rubric](#) [secFol](#) [settlement](#) [sex](#) [signatures](#) [socecStatus](#) [stamp](#) [summary](#) [surname](#) [term](#) [textLang](#) [watermark](#)

Declaration `macro.phraseSeq = (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global)*`

4.8.5 macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

Module `tei`

Used by [age](#) [authority](#) [classCode](#) [creation](#) [funder](#) [langKnown](#) [language](#) [principal](#) [resp](#) [sponsor](#)

Declaration `macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global)*`

4.8.6 macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

Module `tei`

Used by [accMat](#) [acquisition](#) [additions](#) [collation](#) [condition](#) [custEvent](#) [decoNote](#) [filiation](#) [foliation](#) [handNote](#) [item](#) [layout](#) [musicNotation](#) [note](#) [origin](#) [provenance](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [source](#) [support](#) [surrogates](#) [typeName](#)

Declaration `macro.specialPara =`

```
(
  text
|model.gLike
|model.phrase
|model.inter
|model.divPart
|model.global
)*
```

4.8.7 macro.xtext

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module [tei](#)

Used by [am](#) [collection](#) [depth](#) [ex](#) [geogFeat](#) [height](#) [institution](#) [locus](#) [mapping](#) [msName](#)
[offset](#) [origPlace](#) [repository](#) [value](#) [width](#)

Declaration macro.xtext = (text | [model.gLike](#))*

4.9 Schema enrich: Elements

4.9.1 <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF>

Module [textstructure](#)

In addition to global attributes

version

The version of the TEI scheme

Status

Attributes Optional

Datatype

xsd:decimal

Values

A number identifying the version of the TEI guidelines

Used by

header: [teiHeader](#)

May contain textstructure: [text](#)

transcr: [facsimile](#)

element
TEI

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```


Example	<pre> <sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei- c.org/ns/1.0"/><sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> <TEI> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No source: this is an original work.</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </teiHeader> <text> <body> <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p> </body> </text></TEI> </pre>
Note	This element is required.

4.9.2 <abbr>

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB>

Module	<p>core</p> <p>In addition to global attributes</p> <p>type</p> <p>allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Sample values include:</p> <p>suspension</p> <p>the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.</p>
Attributes	<p>contraction</p> <p>the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.</p> <p>brevigraph</p> <p>the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.</p> <p>superscription</p> <p>the abbreviation includes writing above the line.</p> <p>acronym</p> <p>the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.</p> <p>title</p> <p>the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)</p> <p>organization</p> <p>the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.</p> <p>geographic</p> <p>the abbreviation is for a geographic name.</p>

	<p>Note</p>
	<p>The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see ??</p>
Used by	<p>model.pPart.editorial model.choicePart core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element abbr { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Example	<p><abbr>SPQR</abbr></p>
Example	<p><choice> <abbr>SPQR</abbr> <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan></choice></p>
Note	<p>The abbr tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but <i>expanded</i> silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.</p>

4.9.3 <accMat>

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period. [2.4.3.3 Accompanying Material](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by	model.physDescPart core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
Declaration	<pre> element accMat { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.specialPara } </pre>
Example	<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>

4.9.4 <acquisition>

<acquisition> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution. [2.5 History](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
Used by	history core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
acquisition

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.data.table.w3c.attribute.to,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

Declaration

Examp <acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name>
le by<name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755.</acquisition>

4.9.5 <add>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status, @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))) ([att.placement](#) (@place) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
add

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
}
```

Declaration

```

    att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
    att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
    att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    att.placement.attribute.place,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.paraContent
}

```

Example The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="supralinear">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

Note The [add](#) element should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the [corr](#) or [supplied](#) element should be used.

4.9.6 <addName>

<addName> (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.personal](#) (@full, @sort)

Attributes ([att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.persNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
addName

Declaration {
 [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
 [att.global.attribute.n](#),
 [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),
 [att.global.attribute.rend](#),
 [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#),

```

    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.personal.attribute.full,
    att.personal.attribute.sort,
    att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
    att.canonical.attribute.key,
    att.canonical.attribute.ref,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <persName> <forename>Frederick</forename> <addName type="epithet">th
e Great</addName> <roleName>Emperor of
Prussia</roleName></persName>

4.9.7 <addSpan>

<addSpan> (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>). <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD>

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status, @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))) [att.placement](#) (@place) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.spanning](#) (@spanTo)

Used by [model.global.edit](#)

May contain Empty element

```

element
addSpan
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
    att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
    att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    att.placement.attribute.place,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    att.spanning.attribute.spanTo,
    empty
}

```

```

<sch:pattern name="spanTo_required"><sch:rule context="tei:addSpan"> <sch
:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is
required.</sch:assert></sch:rule></sch:pattern>

```

Example	<pre> <handNote xml:id="HEOL" scribe="HelgiÓlafsson"/><!-- ... -- ><body> <div><!-- text here --> </div> <addSpan n="added gathering" hand="#HEOL" spanTo="#P025"/> <div><!-- text of first added poem here --> </div> <div><!-- text of second added poem here -- > </div> <div><!-- text of third added poem here --> </div> <div><!-- text of fourth added poem here --> </div> <anchor xml:id="P025"/> <div><!-- more text here --> </div></body> </pre>
Note	Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the addSpan element itself, the end by the spanTo attribute.

4.9.8 <additional>

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information. [2.6 Additional information](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	msDesc msPart
May contain	core: listBibl msdescription: adminInfo surrogates

Declaration	<pre> element additional { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (adminInfo?, surrogates?, listBibl?) } </pre>
-------------	---

Example	<pre> <additional> <adminInfo> <recordHist><!-- record history here --> </recordHist> <custodialHist><!-- custodial history here --> </custodialHist> </adminInfo> <surrogates><!-- information about surrogates here --> </surrogates> <listBibl><!-- full bibliography here -- > </listBibl></additional> </pre>
---------	--

4.9.9 <additions>

<additions> contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.physDescPart
May contain	core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula

gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#)
[material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#)
[width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#)
[genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)
[nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#)
[settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#)
[restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
additions

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

Example

<additions> <p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a drawing of a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v: <q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>, on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>, on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud summu all huad batar þad mælgi ok mal</q>, On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue maria gracia plena dominus</q>.</p></additions>

4.9.10 <addrLine>

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        addrLine
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example

```

<address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC
135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago,
IL</addrLine> <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine></address>

```

Note

Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an [addrLine](#) if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

4.9.11 <adminInfo>

<adminInfo> (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself. [2.6.1 Administrative information](#)

Module msdescription
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [additional](#)
 core: [note](#)
May contain header: [availability](#)
 msdescription: [custodialHist](#) [recordHist](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        adminInfo
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        ( recordHist?, availability?, custodialHist?, model.noteLike? )
    }

```

Example

```

<adminInfo> <recordHist>
<source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date>
</source> </recordHist> <availability>
<p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this    collection
has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask repository staff for
details    if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
Correspondence.</p> </availability> <custodialHist>
<p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of    Edgar

```

Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p> </custodialHist></adminInfo>

4.9.12 <affiliation>

<affiliation> contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [model.addressLike](#) [model.persStateLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
affiliation

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Declaration

}

- Example** `<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US<name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name></affiliation><affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName></affiliation>`
- Note** If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the [name](#) element as above, or the more specific [orgName](#) element.

4.9.13 **<age>**

`<age>` specifies the age of a person.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
value

supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group

Attributes

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Note

This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

May contain [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
age

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,

```

Declaration

```

att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
attribute value { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

Example <age value="2" notAfter="1986">under 20 in the early eighties</age>

4.9.14 <altIdentifier>

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status

Required

Datatype

xsd:Name

Attributes Legal values are:

former

former catalogue or shelf number

system

former system identifier (Manuscriptorium specific)

partial

identifier of a previously distinct item

internal

internal project identifier

other

unspecified [Default]

Used by [msIdentifier](#) [msPart](#)

core: [note](#)

May contain header: [idno](#)

msdescription: [collection](#) [institution](#) [repository](#)

namesdates: [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)

element

altIdentifier

{

Declaration

[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),

[att.global.attribute.n](#),

[att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),

[att.global.attribute.rend](#),

[att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#),

[att.global.facs.attribute.facs](#),

attribute type { "former" | "system" | "partial" | "internal" |

```
"other" },
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  (
    model.placeNamePart sequenceOptional,
    institution?,
    repository?,
    collection?,
    idno,
    note?
  )
}
```

Example <altIdentifier> <settlement>San
Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington
Library</repository> <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno></altIdentifier>

Note An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not
known, this should be stated.

4.9.15 <am>

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation
which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAB>

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp,
@evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast,
@atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.pPart.editorial](#) [model.choicePart](#)

May contain gajji: [g](#)

```

                                element
                                am
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  macro.xtext
}
```

Example do you<abbr>Mr<am>.</am></abbr> Jones?

4.9.16 <anchor>

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it
corresponds with a textual element. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5->

[doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS>

Module linking

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.milestoneLike](#)

May contain Empty element

```

    element
    anchor
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      empty
    }

```

Example <s>The anchor is here<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s><s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/></s>

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

4.9.17 <author>

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; the primary statement of responsibility for any bibliographic item. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)

Used by [titleStmt](#) [model.respLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
 figures: [formula](#)
 gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)

[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#)
[restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
author

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author><author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</author>

Note

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. The attributes key or ref may also be used to reference canonical information about the author intended in an appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

4.9.18 <authority>

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.publicationStmtPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#)
[note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

May contain [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
authority

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

}

Example <authority>John Smith</authority>

4.9.19 <availability>

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24>

Module header

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default)

status

supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status

Attributes Required

Legal values are:

free

unknown

[Default]

restricted

Used by [adminInfo](#) [model.publicationStmtPart](#)

May contain core: [p](#)

element
availability

Declaration

```
{
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" },
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example <availability status="restricted"> <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p></availability><availability status="free"> <p>In the public domain</p></availability><availability status="restricted"> <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p></availability>

Note A consistent format should be adopted

4.9.20 <back>

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSBACK>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

Used by [facsimile text](#)

core: [cb](#) [divGen](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)

May linking: [anchor](#)

contain textstructure: [div](#) [docAuthor](#) [docEdition](#) [docImprint](#) [docTitle](#) [titlePage](#) [titlePart](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

```

                                element
                                back
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global ) *,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global ) *
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global ) *
      )
    ) ?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global ) * ) ? )
}

```

Declaration

Example

```

<back> <div1 type="appendix">
<head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
<p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature
</p> </div1> <div1 type="epistle">
<head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires    may be
inserted</head>
<salute>Sir.</salute>
<p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return    it to the Vatican,
if you please
</p> </div1> <div1 type="advert">
<head>The Books usually read by the Scholars    of Mrs Two-Shoes
are these and are sold at Mr    Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St
Paul's    Church-yard.</head>
<list>
<item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
<item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
<item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected    from the
Writers of all Nations, 10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
</list> </div1> <div1 type="advert">
<head>
<hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi>    Are sold by J.

```

```
NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in    St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
<list>
<item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the    Small-Pox,
Measles, Colds, &amp;c. 2s. 6d</item>
<item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
</list> </div1></back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

4.9.21 <bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.biblLike](#) [model.msItemPart](#) [model.personPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [author](#) [biblScope](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [editor](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [relatedItem](#) [respStmt](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

header: [distributor](#) [edition](#) [extent](#) [idno](#)

May contain linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [depth](#) [height](#) [msIdentifier](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
bibl

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  (
    text
    |model.gLike
    |model.highlighted
    |model.pPart.data
    |model.pPart.edit
    |model.segLike
    |model.ptrLike
    |model.biblPart
    |model.global
  ) *
}
```

Declaration

	}
Example	<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
Example	<bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.<publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>.</bibl>
Note	Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the biblPart class

4.9.22 <biblScope>

<biblScope> (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI>

Module	core
	In addition to global attributes
	type
	identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. pages, volume.
	Status
	Required
Attributes	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Legal values are:
	volume
	pages
	[Default]
Used by	model.imprintPart
	core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear
	figures: formula
	gaiji: g
	linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
	namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname
	transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

	element
	biblScope
Declaration	<pre> { attribute type { "volume" "pages" }, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq </pre>

}

Example `<biblScope>pp 12–
34</biblScope><biblScope type="vol">II</biblScope><biblScope type="pp">
12</biblScope>`

4.9.23 **<binding>**

<binding> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript. [2.4.3.1 Binding Descriptions](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) contemporary

specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents

Status

Attributes Optional

Datatype

xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"

Note

The value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown

Used by [bindingDesc](#)

May core: [p](#)

contain msdescription: [condition](#) [decoNote](#)

element
binding

Declaration

```
{
  attribute contemporary { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
}?,
att.global.attribute.xmlid,
att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
( model.pLike | decoNote | condition )+
}
```

Example `<binding contemporary="true"> <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over
wooden boards with evidence of a fore edge clasp closing to the back
cover.</p></binding>`

`<bindingDesc> <binding contemporary="false">`

Example `<p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker on
the front pastedown.</p> </binding> <binding contemporary="false">
<p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and`

gilt.</p> </binding></bindingDesc>

4.9.24 <bindingDesc>

<bindingDesc> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct [binding](#) elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [2.4.3.1 Binding Descriptions](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.physDescPart](#)

May contain core: [p](#)
msdescription: [binding](#) [condition](#) [decoNote](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    bindingDesc
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      ( ( model.pLike | decoNote | condition )+ | binding+ )
    }

```

Example

<bindingDesc> <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over 19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p></bindingDesc>

4.9.25 <birth>

<birth> contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [model.persEventLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [formula](#)
May contain gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        birth
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.editLike.attribute.cert,
        att.editLike.attribute.resp,
        att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
        att.editLike.attribute.source,
        att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
        att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
        att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
        att.dimensions.attribute.min,
        att.dimensions.attribute.max,
        att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
        att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
        att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
        att.canonical.attribute.key,
        att.canonical.attribute.ref,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example <birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>

Example <birth when="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date></birth>

4.9.26 <bloc>

<bloc> contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May figures: [formula](#)

contain gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element bloc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<pre> <bloc type="union">the European Union</bloc><bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc> </pre>
---------	---

4.9.27 <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

Used by [text](#)

core: [bibl](#) [cb](#) [desc](#) [divGen](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [note](#)
[p](#) [pb](#) [q](#) [quote](#)

figures: [figure](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

contain msdescription: [msDesc](#)

namesdates: [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)

textstructure: [div](#) [docAuthor](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

	<pre> element body { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declaring.attribute.decls, (model.global*, </pre>
Declaration	

```
( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop ) * ) ?,
( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike ) * ) ?,
(
  ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike ) * ) +
  | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike ) * ) +
  | (
    ( ( model.common ), model.global * ) +,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike
    ) * ) +
      | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike
    ) * ) +
    ) ?
  )
),
( ( model.divBottom ), model.global * ) *
)
```

Example

<body> <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l> <l>metudæs maecti end his
modgidanc</l> <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l> <l>eci dryctin or
astelidæ</l> <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l> <l>heben til hrofe haleg
scepen.</l> <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l> <l>eci dryctin æfter
tiadæ</l> <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon
istud carmen. </trailer></body>

4.9.28 <catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text
typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational
parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-
doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [category](#)

core: [abbr](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gloss](#) [name](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

May contain namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [am](#) [ex](#) [handShift](#) [subst](#)

```

      element
      catDesc
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart ) *
    }

```

Declaration

Example <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>

Example <catDesc> <textDesc n="novel">
<channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>

```
<constitution type="single"/>
<derivation type="original"/>
<domain type="art"/>
<factuality type="fiction"/>
<interaction type="none"/>
<preparedness type="prepared"/>
<purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
<purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/> </textDesc></catDesc>
```

4.9.29 <catRef>

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43>

Module	header
	In addition to global attributes
	target
	identifies the categories concerned
	Status
	Required
	Datatype
	1–∞ occurrences of <code>xsd:anyURI</code> separated by whitespace
	Values
	A series of one or more space-separated pointers (URIs) to category elements, typically located within a taxonomy element inside a TEI header
Attributes	scheme
	identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined
	Status
	Optional
	Datatype
	<code>xsd:anyURI</code>
	Values
	May supply the identifier of the associated taxonomy element.
Used by	textClass
May contain	Empty element

	element
	catRef
Declaration	<pre>{ att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }, attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?, empty }</pre>

Example <catRef target="#news #prov #sales2"/><!-- elsewhere -->

```
<taxonomy> <category xml:id="news">
<catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="prov">
<catDesc>Provincial</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="sales2">
<catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc> </category></taxonomy>
```

Note The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

4.9.30 <catchwords>

<catchwords> describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunable, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page. [2.1.7 Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio](#)

Module msdescription
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)
core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

element
catchwords
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

4.9.31 <category>

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55>

Module header
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [category](#) [taxonomy](#)
core: [desc](#) [gloss](#)
May contain header: [catDesc](#) [category](#)

Declaration

```

element
category
```

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( ( catDesc | model.glossLike* ), category* )
}
```

Example `<category xml:id="b1"> <catDesc>Prose
reportage</catDesc></category>`

Example `<category xml:id="b2"> <catDesc>Prose </catDesc> <category
xml:id="b11">
<catDesc>reportage</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="b12">
<catDesc>fiction</catDesc> </category></category>`

4.9.32 <cb>

<cb> (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

ed
(edition) indicates the edition or version in which the column break is located at this point

Attributes Status
Recommended
Datatype
xsd:anyURI
Values

Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

Used by [model.milestoneLike](#)

May contain Empty element

```
element
cb
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute ed { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}
```

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:
`<pb/><cb n="1"/><entryFree> <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold
Spring-Water</sense>:<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a`

Depth the Miner sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the
Enemies Mines, or to prepare one</sense>.</entryFree><entryFree>To
<form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or<sense>lie
groveling</sense>.</entryFree><!-- remainder of column --
><cb n="2"/><entryFree> <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure
for dry Things, containing five
Chaldron</sense>.</entryFree><entryFree> <form>Whale</form>,
<sense>the greatest of Sea-Fishes</sense>.</entryFree>

Note

On this element, the global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this `cb` element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the `cb` element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

4.9.33 <change>

<change> summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6>

Module header

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.ascribed](#) (@who) when

supplies the date of the change in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Attributes

Datatype

xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime

Values

a date, time, or date & time in any of the formats defined in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition

Used by

[revisionDesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#)
[listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

figures: [figure](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
change

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
```



```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.ascribed.attribute.who,
attribute
                                when
{
    xsd:date
  |xsd:gYear
  |xsd:gMonth
  |xsd:gDay
  |xsd:gYearMonth
  |xsd:gMonthDay
  |xsd:time
  |xsd:dateTime
}?,
( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | model.global ) *
}

```

Example

```

<titleStmt> <title> ... </title> <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou
Burnard</editor> <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
<resp>copy editing</resp>
<name>Brett Zamir</name> </respStmt></titleStmt><!-- ... --
><revisionDesc> <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02">Finished chapter
23</change> <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02">Finished chapter
2</change> <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added
examples to section 3</change> <change when="1991-11-
11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change></revisionDesc>

```

Note

The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a [respStmt](#) or [person](#) element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first.

4.9.34 <char>

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.

Module [gaiji](#)

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [charDecl](#)

core: [desc](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [note](#)

May contain figures: [formula](#)

[gaiji](#): [charName](#) [charProp](#) [mapping](#)

Declaration

```

                                element
                                char
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    (
        charName?,
        model.glossLike*,
        charProp*,
        mapping*,
        model.graphicLike*,
        model.noteLike*
    )
}

```

```

    }

    <char xml:id="circledU4EBA"> <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH
    4EBA</charName> <charProp>
    <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
Example  <value>circle</value> </charProp> <charProp>
    <localName>daikanwa</localName>
    <value>36</value> </charProp> <mapping type="standard">
    □ </mapping></char>

```

4.9.35 <charDecl>

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.encodingPart](#)

May contain core: [desc](#)
gaiji: [char](#) [glyph](#)

```

                                element
                                charDecl
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ )
}

```

```

Example  <charDecl> <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standardized">a</mapping> </char></charDecl>

```

4.9.36 <charName>

<charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [char](#)

May contain Character data only

```

                                element
                                charName
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    text
}

```

}

Example <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of [charNames](#) to facilitate data exchange.

4.9.37 <charProp>

<charProp> (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [char glyph](#)

May contain gaiji: [localName](#) [unicodeName](#) [value](#)

Declaration

```

                                element
                                charProp
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    ( ( unicodeName | localName ), value )
}
```

Example <charProp> <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName> <value>circle</value></charProp><charProp> <localName>daikanwa</localName> <value>36</value></charProp>

Note If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its [unicodeName](#) must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specified by means of a [localName](#).
At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

4.9.38 <choice>

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [choice model.pPart.editorial](#)

core: [abbr](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [expan](#) [orig](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [unclear](#)

May contain linking: [seg](#)
transcr: [am](#) [ex](#)

Declaration

```

                                element
                                choice
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,

```

```

att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
( model.choicePart | choice ) *
}

```

Example An American encoding of Gulliver's Travels which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```

<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the
said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient
for the support of <choice>
<sic>1724</sic>
<corr>1728</corr> </choice> of our subjects, with free access to our royal
person, and other marks of our<choice>
<orig>favour</orig>
<reg>favor</reg> </choice>.</p>

```

Note Because the children of a [choice](#) element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that [choice](#) elements may self-nest. For a specialized version of [choice](#) for encoding multiple witnesses of a single work, see section [??](#).

4.9.39 <classCode>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43>

Module	header
	In addition to global attributes
	scheme
	identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.
	Status
Attributes	Required
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
	Values
	may point to a local definition, for example in a taxonomy element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.
Used by	textClass
	core: abbr cb choice date expan foreign gap gloss index lb milestone name note pb ptr ref term title
	linking: anchor
	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
May contain	namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname
	transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift space subst

	<pre> element classCode { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }, macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>
Declaration	

Example <classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>

4.9.40 <classDecl>

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5>

Module	header
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.encodingPart
May contain	header: taxonomy

	<pre> element classDecl { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, taxonomy+ } </pre>
Declaration	

	<pre> <classDecl> <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH"> <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl> </taxonomy></classDecl><!-- ... -- ><textClass> <keywords scheme="#LCSH"> <list> <item>Political science</item> <item>United States -- Politics and government — Revolution, 1775- 1783</item> </list> </keywords></textClass> </pre>
Example	

4.9.41 <collation>

<collation> contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged. [2.4.1 Object Description](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	supportDesc
May contain	core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss

[graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#)
[quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
 figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
 gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      collation
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      macro.specialPara
    }
  
```

Example

<collation>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf, conjoint with the pastedown.</collation>

<collation> <p>

<formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text) 7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula>

Example

<catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center or towards the right lower margin in various manners: in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals); quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames; quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text; quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in cursive hand.</catchwords> </p></collation>

4.9.42 <collection>

<collection> contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [altIdentifier](#) [msIdentifier](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      collection
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    }
  
```

```

    att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
    att.canonical.attribute.key,
    att.canonical.attribute.ref,
    macro.xtext
}

```

Example `<msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region>California</region> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <collection>Ellesmere</collection> <idno>El 26 C 9</idno> <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName></msIdentifier>`

4.9.43 <colophon>

<colophon> contains the colophon of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript.

2.3.1 The <msItem>Element

Module `msdescription`

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain `msdescription`: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

`namesdates`: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

`transcr`: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    colophon
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example `<colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini 1447.</colophon>`

Example `<colophon>Explicit expliceat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon>`

Example `<colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno domini Millessimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur libellus iste.</colophon>`

4.9.44 <condition>

<condition> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript. [2.4.1.5 Condition](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	binding bindingDesc sealDesc supportDesc core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
Declaration	<pre> element condition { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.specialPara } </pre>
Example	<pre> <condition> <p>There are lacunae in three places in this manuscript. After 14v two leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine. After 68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8 leaves has been lost. </p> <p>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on fol. 2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v, 32r-35v, 37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v, 70r-v, 74r- 80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On fol. 98 the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due to moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or wrinkled. </p> <p>The script has been touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the following fols. was done by <name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r, 6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,. An AM-note says according to the lawman <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the touching up was done by himself and another lawman <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>. <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v. <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the touching up in the section 36r-59r containing <title>Bretasögur</title> </p></condition> </pre>

4.9.45 <corr>

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR>

Module	core
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.editLike (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

Declaration	element
	corr
	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.paraContent } </pre>

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, [corr](#) may be used alone:
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example It is also possible, using the [choice](#) and [sic](#) elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <choice> <sic>we can</sic> <corr>can we</corr></choice> prove or disprove anyone's

theories?

4.9.46 <country>

<country> contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#)

Attributes (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
country

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example <country key="DK">Denmark</country>

Note The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

4.9.47 <creation>

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei->

<p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4>

Module	header
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	profileDesc core: abbr cb choice date expan foreign gap gloss index lb milestone name note pb ptr ref term title linking: anchor msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material May contain origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift space subst
Declaration	<pre> element creation { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>
Example	<creation> <date>Before 1987</date></creation>
Example	<creation> <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date></creation> Character data and phrase-level elements.
Note	The creation element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest; it should not be confused with the publicationStmnt element, which records date and place of publication.

4.9.48 <custEvent>

<custEvent> (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript. [2.6.1.2 Availability and Custodial History](#)

Module	msdescription In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
Attributes	Status Required Datatype xsd:Name Legal values are: check conservation

	<p>description exhibition loan photography other [Default]</p>
Used by	<p>custodialHist</p> <p>core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element custEvent { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to, attribute type { "check" "conservation" "description" "exhibition" "loan" "photography" "other" }, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.specialPara } </pre>
Example	<pre> <custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec 1964</date></custEvent> </pre>

4.9.49 <custodialHist>

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events. [2.6.1.2 Availability and Custodial History](#)

Module msdescription
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [adminInfo](#)
May contain core: [p](#)
msdescription: [custEvent](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    custodialHist
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        ( model.pLike+ | custEvent+ )
    }

```

Example

```

<custodialHist> <custEvent type="conservation" notBefore="1961-
03" notAfter="1963-02">Conserved between March 1961 and February 1963
at Birgitte Dalls
Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent> <custEvent type="photography" notBefore="1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-05-30">Photographed in May 1988 by
AMI/FA.</custEvent> <custEvent type="transfer-dispatch" notBefore="1989-11-13" notAfter="1989-11-13">Dispatched to Iceland 13 November
1989.</custEvent></custodialHist>

```

4.9.50 <damage>

<damage> contains an area of damage to the text witness. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA>

Module transcr
Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
[att.damaged](#) (@hand, @agent, @degree, @group) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))
Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)
core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    damage
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,

```

```

att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
att.damaged.attribute.hand,
att.damaged.attribute.agent,
att.damaged.attribute.degree,
att.damaged.attribute.group,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
macro.paraContent
}

```

Example `<l>The Moving Finger wri<damage agent="water" group="1">es;
and</damage> having writ,</l><l>Moves <damage agent="water" group="1">
<supplied>on: nor all your</supplied> </damage> Piety nor Wit</l>`

Note Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the [damage](#) element will often contain an [unclear](#) element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the group attribute may be used to group together several related [damage](#) elements; alternatively the `<join>` element may be used to indicate which [damage](#) and [unclear](#) elements are part of the same physical phenomenon.

The [damage](#), [gap](#), [del](#), [unclear](#) and [supplied](#) elements may be closely allied in use. See section ?? for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

4.9.51 <damageSpan>

<damageSpan> (damaged span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text which is damaged in some way but still legible. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA>

Module	transcr
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.damaged (@hand, @agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)
Used by	model.global.edit
May contain	Empty element

	element
	damageSpan
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.damaged.attribute.hand, att.damaged.attribute.agent, </pre>

```

att.damaged.attribute.degree,
att.damaged.attribute.group,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
att.spanning.attribute.spanTo,
empty
}

```

Example	<p><sch:pattern name="spanTo_required_for_damageSpan"><sch:rule context="tei:damageSpan"> <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert></sch:rule></sch:pattern></p> <p><p>Paragraph partially damaged. This is the undamaged portion <damageSpan spanTo="#a34"/>and this the damaged portion of the paragraph.</p><p>This paragraph is entirely damaged.</p><p>Paragraph partially damaged; in the middle of this paragraph the damage ends and the anchor point marks the start of the <anchor xml:id="a34"/> undamaged part of the text. ...</p></p>
Note	<p>Both the beginning and ending of the damaged sequence must be marked: the beginning by the delSpan element, the ending by the target of the spanTo attribute: if no other element available, the anchor element may be used for this purpose.</p> <p>The damaged text must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the damageSpan element should not be used. Rather, the gap or unclear element should be employed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause. See further sections ?? and ??.</p>

4.9.52 <date>

<date> contains a date in any format. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

calendar

indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

	<p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <p>Gregorian</p> <p>Gregorian calendar</p> <p>Julian</p> <p>Julian calendar</p> <p>Islamic</p> <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p> <p>Hebrew</p> <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p> <p>Revolutionary</p> <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p> <p>Iranian</p> <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p> <p>Coptic</p> <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p> <p>Chinese</p> <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
Used by	<p>He was born on<date calendar="Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="Julian" when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).</p> <p>model.dateLike model.publicationStmntPart</p> <p>core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element date { attribute calendar { "Gregorian" "Julian" "Islamic" "Hebrew" "Revolutionary" "Iranian" "Coptic" "Chinese" xsd:Name }?, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, </pre>

```

att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

<sch:pattern name="date_values"><sch:rule context="tei:date"> <sch:assert test="@when or (@notAfter and @notBefore) or (@from and @to)"> You must provide either @when or @to/@from, or @notAfter/@notBefore.</sch:assert></sch:rule></sch:pattern>

Example <date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

Example Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example <date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>

4.9.53 <death>

<death> contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [model.persEventLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

May linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	element death
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

Example <death when="1902-10-01"/>

Example <death when="1960-12-10">Passed away near<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cerebral palsy.</death>

4.9.54 <decoDesc>

<decoDesc> (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organised [decoNote](#) elements. [2.4.3 Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.physDescPart
May contain	core: p msdescription: decoNote

	element decoDesc
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (model.pLike+ decoNote+) } </pre>

Example <decoDesc> <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p></decoDesc>

4.9.55 <decoNote>

<decoNote> (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [2.4.3 Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
type
characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Legal values are:

border

diagram

initial

marginal

miniature

mixed

paratext

secondary

other

[Default]

illustration

printmark

publishmark

vignette

frieze

map

unspecified

Attributes

Used by [binding](#) [bindingDesc](#) [decoDesc](#) [seal](#) [sealDesc](#) [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

May contain linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

                                element
                                decoNote
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  attribute
                                type
  {
    "border"
  | "diagram"
  | "initial"
  | "marginal"
  | "miniature"
  | "mixed"
  | "paratext"
  | "secondary"
  | "other"
  | "illustration"
  | "printmark"
  | "publishmark"
  | "vignette"
  | "frieze"
  | "map"
  | "unspecified"
  }?,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.specialPara
}

```

Example

```

<decoDesc> <decoNote type="initial">
<p>The start of each book of the Bible with   a 10-line historiated illuminated
initial;   prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials   with red penwork
flourishing; chapters marked by   3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line
initials,   alternately blue or red.</p> </decoNote></decoDesc>

```

4.9.56

 (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status, @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))) ([att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May contain figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

element
del
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.paraContent
}

```

Example

```

<l> <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del>
Frisch<del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del> weht der
Wind</l>

```

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see [??](#)).

This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The [delSpan](#) element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

Note

The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. Illegible text within a deletion may be marked using the [gap](#) tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed. Attributes on the [gap](#) element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the [unclear](#) element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. See further sections [??](#) and, for the close association of the [del](#) tag with the [gap](#), [damage](#), [unclear](#) and [supplied](#) elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), [??](#).

The [del](#) tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In

these cases, either the [corr](#) tag or the [gap](#) tag should be used.

4.9.57 <delSpan>

<delSpan> (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD>

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status, @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.spanning](#) (@spanTo)

Used by [model.global.edit](#)

May contain Empty element

```

element
delSpan
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.spanning.attribute.spanTo,
  empty
}

```

Declaration

```

<sch:pattern name="spanTo_required_for_delSpan"><sch:rule context="tei:delSpan"> <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert></sch:rule></sch:pattern>

```

Example

```

<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted portion
<delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted portion of the
paragraph.</p><p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent
material.</p><p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p><p>Paragraph partially
deleted; in the middle of this paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point
marks the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>

```

Note

Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the [delSpan](#) element, the ending by the target of the spanTo attribute.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be

able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the [delSpan](#) tag should not be used. Rather, the [gap](#) tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the [unclear](#) element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections [??](#) and, for the close association of the [delSpan](#) tag with the [gap](#), [damage](#), [unclear](#) and [supplied](#) elements, [??](#).

The [delSpan](#) tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the [corr](#) tag or the [gap](#) tag should be used.

4.9.58 <depth>

<depth> specifies a length measured across the spine. [2.1.4 Dimensions](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)

Used by [dimensions](#) [model.measureLike](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

	<pre> element depth { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, macro.xtext } </pre>
Declaration	

Example <depth unit="in" quantity="4"/>

4.9.59 <desc>

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAG> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDATT> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDCLA> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDENT>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.translatable](#) (@version)

Used by [charDecl](#) [relation](#) [model.glossLike](#) [model.labelLike](#)

May contain core: [abbr](#) [bibl](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gloss](#) [label](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [name](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

figures: [figure](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [am](#) [ex](#) [handShift](#) [subst](#)

	element
	desc
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.translatable.attribute.version, macro.limitedContent } </pre>

Example	<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
---------	--

Note	TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.
------	---

4.9.60 <dimensions>

<dimensions> contains a dimensional specification. [2.1.4 Dimensions](#)

Module	msdescription
--------	---------------

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)

type

indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

Status

Required

Datatype

Attributes	xsd:Name
------------	-----------------

Legal values are:

leaf

binding

slip

written

boxed

unknown

[Default]

Used by	model.pPart.msdesc
---------	------------------------------------

May contain	msdescription: depth height width
-------------	---

	element
	dimensions
Declaration	<pre> { attribute { type </pre>

```

    "leaf" | "binding" | "slip" | "written" | "boxed" | "unknown"
  },
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  ( height?, width?, depth? )
}

```

Example `<dimensions type="leaves"> <height scope="range">157-160</height> <width>105</width></dimensions><dimensions type="ruled"> <height scope="most">90</height> <width scope="most">48</width></dimensions><dimensions unit="in"> <height>12</height> <width>10</width></dimensions>`

When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the quantity attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example.

Example `<dimensions type="leaves"> <height scope="range">157-160</height> <width quantity="105"/></dimensions><dimensions type="ruled"> <height unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="90"/> <width unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="48"/></dimensions><dimensions unit="in"> <height quantity="12"/> <width quantity="10"/></dimensions>`

Note Contains the length of one or more of a 1-, 2-, or 3-dimensional object's height, width, and depth.

4.9.61 <istributor>

<istributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.imprintPart](#) [model.publicationStmtPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element distributor { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	
Example	<pre> <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor><distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor> </pre>

4.9.62 <district>

<district> contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<p>Global attributes and those inherited from att.naming (@nymRef)</p> <p>(att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))</p>
Used by	<p>model.placeNamePart</p> <p>core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>

	<pre> element district { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from, att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	

}

Example <placeName> <district type="ward">Jericho</district> <settlement>Oxford</settlement></placeName>

Example <placeName> <district type="area">South
Side</district> <settlement>Chicago</settlement></placeName>

4.9.63 <div>

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.divLike](#) (@org, @sample, @part)
[att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

Used by [model.divLike](#)

core: [bibl](#) [cb](#) [desc](#) [divGen](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#)
[note](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [q](#) [quote](#)

figures: [figure](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain msdescription: [msDesc](#)

namesdates: [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)

textstructure: [div](#) [docAuthor](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

element
div

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  Declaration
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
      | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

Example <body> <div type="part">
<head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
<p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to

```

repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
<div n="1" type="chapter">
<head>The Nature of Authority</head>
<p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their      object the
greatest happiness of the greatest number....</p>
<div n="1.1" type="section">
<head>Analysis of Authority</head>
<p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or      influence to be
attached to authority ... </p>
</div>
<div n="1.2" type="section">
<head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
<p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy      when... </p>
</div>
</div> </div></body>

```

4.9.64 <divGen>

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX>

Module	core
	In addition to global attributes
	type
	specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.
	Status
	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Sample values include:
Attributes	index
	an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.
	toc
	a table of contents
	figlist
	a list of figures
	tablist
	a list of tables
	Note
	Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.
Used by	model.frontPart model.divGenLike
May contain	core: head

	element
	divGen
Declaration {	
n	att.global.attribute.xmlid ,
	att.global.attribute.n ,
	att.global.attribute.xmllang ,

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
model.headLike*
}

```

One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the `indexName` attribute on `index` elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

Example

```

<back> <div1 type="backmat">
<head>Bibliography</head>
<listBibl>
<bibl/>
</listBibl> </div1> <div1 type="backmat">
<head>Indices</head>
<divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
<divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/> </div1></back>

```

Another use for `divGen` is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

Example

```

<front><!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>--> <divGen type="toc"/> <div>
<head>Preface</head>
<p> ... </p> </div></front>

```

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

4.9.65 <docAuthor>

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)

Used by [model.titlepagePart](#) [model.divWrapper](#) [model.pLike](#) [model.front](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element docAuthor { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	
Example	<pre> <titlePage> <docTitle> <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four Parts.</titlePart> </docTitle> <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline></titlePage> </pre>
Note	The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the docAuthor element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not.

4.9.66 <docEdition>

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module	textstructure
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

	<pre> element docEdition { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.paraContent } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
---------	--

Note Cf. the [edition](#) element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

4.9.67 <docImprint>

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.titlepagePart](#) [model.pLike.front](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    docImprint
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | pubPlace | publisher |
        model.global ) *
    }

```

<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

Example <docImprint> <pubPlace>London</pubPlace> Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>, at<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;<name>J. Roberts</name> in<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;<name>A. Dodd</name> without<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>; and <name>J. Graves</name> in<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace> <date>1722.</date></docImprint>

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

4.9.68 <docTitle>

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as

given on a title page. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)

Used by [model.titlepagePart](#) [model.pLike.front](#)

core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)

May linking: [anchor](#)

contain textstructure: [titlePart](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

```

element
docTitle
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  ( model.global\*, ( titlePart, model.global\* )+ )
}

```

Example
`<docTitle> <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD,
VARIOURVM. </titlePart> <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA
of SCRIBLERUS. </titlePart></docTitle>`

4.9.69 <edition>

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [editionStmt](#) [model.biblPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#)
[index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#)
[material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#)
[genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#)
[placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#)
[restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

element
edition
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,

```

```

    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <edition>First edition <date>Oct
1990</date></edition><edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>

4.9.70 <editionStmt>

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [fileDesc](#)

May core: [p respStmt](#)

contain header: [edition](#)

```

                                element
                                editionStmt
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, respStmt* ) )
}

```

Example <editionStmt> <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition> <respStmt>
<resp>Adapted by </resp>
<name>Elizabeth Kirk</name> </respStmt></editionStmt>

Example <editionStmt> <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term,
1991.</date> </p></editionStmt>

4.9.71 <editor>

<editor> secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR>

Module core

In addition to global attributes

role

specifies the nature of the intellectual responsibility

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Values

	semi-open list (examples might include: translator, editor, compiler, illustrator, etc.)
Used by	titleStmt model.respLike core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
Declaration	<pre> element editor { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute role { xsd:Name }?, macro.phraseSeg } </pre>
Example	<pre> <editor>Eric Johnson</editor><editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor> </pre> <p>A consistent format should be adopted</p>
Note	Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

4.9.72 <editorialDecl>

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module	header
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.declarable (@default)
Used by	model.encodingPart
May contain	core: p

Declaration	<pre> element editorialDecl { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, </pre>
-------------	---

```
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,  
att.declarable.attribute.default,  
( model.pLike+ | model.editorialDeclPart+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl> <normalization>  
<p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's  
9th Collegiate dictionary  
</p> </normalization> <quotation marks="all" form="std">  
<p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing quotation  
marks converted to &cdq;.</p> </quotation></editorialDecl>
```

4.9.73 <education>

<education> contains a description of the educational experience of a person. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Attributes

Used by [model.persStateLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
education

```
{  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
  att.global.attribute.n,  
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,  
  att.global.attribute.rend,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,  
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,  
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,  
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,  
  att.editLike.attribute.source,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,  
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,  
}
```

Declaration

```

        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to,
        att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
        att.canonical.attribute.key,
        att.canonical.attribute.ref,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example <education>Left school at age 16</education><education notBefore="1986-01-01" notAfter="1990-06-30">Attended<name>Cherwell School</name></education>

4.9.74 <encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.headerPart](#)

May contain core: [p](#)
gaiji: [charDecl](#)
header: [classDecl](#) [editorialDecl](#) [geoDecl](#) [projectDesc](#)

```

        element
        encodingDesc
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        ( ( model.encodingPart | model.pLike ) + )
    }

```

Example <encodingDesc> <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p></encodingDesc>

4.9.75 <event>

<event> contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization.

Module namesdates

Attributes In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dateable](#) ([att.dateable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.typed](#)

	<p>(@type, @subtype) att.naming (@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))</p> <p>where</p> <p>indicates the location of an event by pointing to a place element</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:anyURI</p> <p>Values</p> <p>any valid URI</p>
Used by	event model.persEventLike model.placeEventLike
May contain	<p>core: bibl desc head label note p</p> <p>msdescription: msDesc</p> <p>namesdates: event</p>
Declaration	<pre> <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?> <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12"> <label>matriculation</label> </event> <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23"> <label>graduation</label> </event> </person> </pre>
Example	<pre> <person> <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12"> <label>matriculation</label> </event> <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23"> <label>graduation</label> </event> </person> </pre>

4.9.76 <ex>

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAB>

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.pPart.editorial](#) [model.choicePart](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

                                element
                                ex
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  macro.xtext
}

```

Example The address is Southmoor
<choice> <expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan> <abbr>Rd</abbr></choice>

4.9.77 <expan>

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.pPart.editorial](#) [model.choicePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio n	<pre> element expan { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
-----------------	---

Example	<p>The address is Southmoor</p> <pre><choice> <expan>Road</expan> <abbr>Rd</abbr></choice></pre>
---------	--

Note	<p>The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The ex element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.</p>
------	--

4.9.78 <explicit>

<explicit> contains the explicit of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module	msdescription
--------	---------------

Attributes	<p>Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)</p>
------------	--

Used by	model.msItemPart
---------	----------------------------------

May contain	<p>core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space</p>
-------------	--

	<u>subst supplied</u>	
	<pre> element explicit { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.msExcerpt.attribute.defective, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>	
Declaration		
Example		<p><explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit><rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric><explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi proporti<gap/></explicit><explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at</explicit></p>

4.9.79 <extent>

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD23> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI>

Module	header
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	fileDesc supportDesc model.biblPart core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
May contain	
Declaration	<pre> element extent { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Example	<extent>3200 sentences</extent><extent>between 10 and 20

Mb</extent><extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>

4.9.80 <facsimile>

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

Used by [model.resourceLike](#)

core: [graphic](#)

May figures: [formula](#)

contain textstructure: [back](#) [front](#)

transcr: [surface](#)

	<pre> element facsimile { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declaring.attribute.decls, (front?, (model.graphicLike surface)+, back?) } </pre>
Declaration	
n	

	<pre> <facsimile> <graphic url="page1.png"/> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2- lowRes.png"/> </surface> <graphic url="page3.png"/> <graphic url="page4.png "/></facsimile> </pre>
Example	

	<pre> <facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface></facsimile> </pre>
Example	

4.9.81 <faith>

<faith> specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person.

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

May gaiji: [g](#)

contain linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)

[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio
n

```

        element
        faith
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.editLike.attribute.cert,
        att.editLike.attribute.resp,
        att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
        att.editLike.attribute.source,
        att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
        att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
        att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
        att.dimensions.attribute.min,
        att.dimensions.attribute.max,
        att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example <faith>protestant</faith>

4.9.82 <figDesc>

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTGRA>

Module figures

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [figure](#)

core: [abbr](#) [bibl](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gloss](#) [label](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [name](#) [ptr](#) [q](#)
[quote](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

figures: [figure](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [am](#) [ex](#) [handShift](#) [subst](#)

Declaratio
n

```

        element
        figDesc
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,

```

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
macro.limitedContent
}

```

Example `<figure> <graphic url="emblem1.png"/> <head>Emblemi
d'Amore</head> <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc></figure>`

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent
[figure](#) element; for example, to display when the image is required but the
equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing
or documentary purposes.

4.9.83 <figure>

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an
illustration or figure. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FT>

Module figures

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.placement](#) (@place)

Used by [figure](#) [model.inter](#) [model.titlepagePart](#)

May contain core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [graphic](#) [head](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [p](#) [pb](#)
figures: [figDesc](#) [figure](#) [formula](#)
linking: [anchor](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

```

element
figure
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.placement.attribute.place,
  (
    model.headLike
  | model.pLike
  | figDesc
  | model.graphicLike
  | model.egLike
  | figure
  | model.global
  ) *
}

```

Declaration

Example `<figure> <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A
Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a
series of buoys strung out between
them.</figDesc> <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/></fig
ure>`

4.9.84 <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [teiHeader](#)

May contain header: [editionStmt](#) [extent](#) [notesStmt](#) [publicationStmt](#) [seriesStmt](#) [sourceDesc](#) [titleStmt](#)

```

                                element
                                fileDesc
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    (
        (
            titleStmt,
            editionStmt?,
            extent?,
            publicationStmt,
            seriesStmt?,
            notesStmt?
        ),
        sourceDesc+
    )
}

```

Example

```

<fileDesc> <titleStmt>
<title>The shortest possible TEI
document</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt>
<p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc>
<p>No print source exists: this is an original digital
text</p> </sourceDesc></fileDesc>

```

Note

The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

4.9.85 <filiation>

<filiation> contains information concerning the manuscript's filiation, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its protographs, antigraphs and apographs.

[2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#)
[hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#)
[sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

May contain

```

    element
    filiation
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.specialPara
  }

```

Declaration

```

<msContents> <msItem>
<title>Beljakovski sbornik</title>
<filiation type="protograph">Bulgarian</filiation>
<filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation>
<filiation type="apograph">
<ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref>
</filiation> </msItem></msContents><!-- ... --><msDesc xml:id="DN17"><!--
... --></msDesc>

```

Example

In this example, the reference to ‘Dujchev N17’ includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier DN17.

```

<msItem> <title>Guan-ben</title> <filiation>
<p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the Qing
dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is therefore difficult to
know the correct filiation path to follow. The study of this era is much indebted
to Li Di. We explain the outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen
(1752-1786)(17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained "Guan-
ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811) (19) took part in editing
Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-
1834) obtained this version, and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General
Dayan Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics Searching for
One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu Zhang (20).</p>
<p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge concerning
the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21) -1817)(see his biography). ...
only two volumes remain of this manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part
2) p.13, that is, question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops),

```

Example

which later has been lost.</p> </filiation></msItem><!--
http://www2.nkfust.edu.tw/~jochi/ed1.htm-->

4.9.86 <finalRubric>

<finalRubric> contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device. [2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    finalRubric
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }

```

Example <finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art d'amours est toute
enclose.</finalRubric><finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Níals
savgv</finalRubric>

4.9.87 <floruit>

<floruit> contains information about a person's period of activity.

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.persStateLike](#)

May contain core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#)

[index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)

[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)

[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)

[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element floruit { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	

Example <floruit notBefore="1066" notAfter="1100"/>

4.9.88 <foliation>

<foliation> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex. [2.4.1.4 Foliation](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [supportDesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expansion](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#)
[graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#)
[quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May contain figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element foliation { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.specialPara } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<foliation>Contemporary foliation in red roman numerals in the centre of the outer margin.</foliation>
---------	--

4.9.89 <foreign>

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHF>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.emphLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
-------------	--

	<pre> element foreign { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?
---------	--

The global `xml:lang` attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in [??](#).

Note This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global `xml:lang` attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The `<distinct>` element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

4.9.90 <forename>

`<forename>` contains a forename, given or baptismal name. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.personal](#) (`@full`, `@sort`) ([att.naming](#) (`@nymRef`) ([att.canonical](#) (`@key`, `@ref`))) [att.typed](#) (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Used by [model.persNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    forename
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.personal.attribute.full,
      att.personal.attribute.sort,
      att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
      att.canonical.attribute.key,
      att.canonical.attribute.ref,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example `<persName> <roleName>Ex-President</roleName> <forename>George</forename> <surname>Bush</surname></persName>`

4.9.91 <formula>

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTFOR>

Module	figures
	In addition to global attributes
	notation
	supplies the name of a previously defined notation used for the content of the element.
	Status
Attributes	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
	Values
	The name of a formal notation previously declared in the document type declaration.
Used by	model.graphicLike
May	core: graphic
contain	figures: formula

	element
	formula
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute notation { xsd:anyURI }?, (text model.graphicLike) * }</pre>

Example <formula notation="TeX">\$e=mc^2\$</formula>

4.9.92 <front>

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS>

Module	textstructure
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.declaring (@decls)
Used by	facsimile text
May	core: cb divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb
contain	linking: anchor
n	textstructure: div docAuthor docEdition docImprint docTitle titlePage titlePart
	transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw space
Decla	element
	front

```
ration {
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )
)? )
}
```

<front> <epigraph>

<quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla pendere,
et cum illi pueri dicerent:

Exam <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat illa:

ple <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>

</quote> </epigraph> <div type="dedication">

<p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>

</p> </div></front>

<front> <div type="dedication">

<p>To our three selves</p> </div> <div type="preface">

Exam <head>Author's Note</head>

ple <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the author has used
names that may suggest a reference to living persons she has done so
inadvertently. ...</p> </div></front>

4.9.93 <funder>

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [titleStmt](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#)
[pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

May linking: [anchor](#)

contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)

[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

Declaratio
n

```

    element
    funder
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      macro.phraseSeq.limited
    }

```

Example

<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</funder><funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</funder><funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder><funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>

Note

Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors, who provide intellectual support and authority.

4.9.94 <fw>

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHSK>

Module

transcr

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.placement](#) (@place) type

classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Status

Recommended

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

header

Attributes

a running title at the top of the page

footer

a running title at the bottom of the page

pageNum

(page number) a page number or foliation symbol

lineNum

(line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

sig

(signature) a signature or gathering symbol

catch

(catchword) a catch-word

Used by

[model.milestoneLike](#)

May contain

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration	<pre> element fw { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.placement.attribute.place, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
-------------	--

Example <fw type="sig" place="bot">C3</fw>

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the [rend](#) attribute. The [fw](#) element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

4.9.95 <g>

<g> (character or glyph) represents a non-standard character or glyph.

Module	gaiji In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.
Attributes	Status Optional Datatype xsd:anyURI Values a pointer to some another element.
Used by	model.gLike
May contain	Character data only

Declaration	<pre> element g { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang,</pre>
-------------	---

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
attribute ref { xsd:anyURI }?,
text
}

```

- Example** `<g ref="#flig">fl</g>`
This example points to a [glyph](#) element with the identifier flig like the following:
`<glyph xml:id="flig"><!--...--></glyph>`
- Note** The name g is short for gaiji, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

4.9.96 **<gap>**

`<gap>` indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD>

- Module** core
- In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))
- reason**
gives the reason for omission of this material from the transcription.
- Status**
Required
Datatype
1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } separated by whitespace
Values
any short indication of the reason for the omission.
Legal values are:
- Attributes** damage
medium is damaged
illegible
material cannot be reliably read
cancelled
material can be read but has been cancelled by scribe
irrelevant
material is not regarded as relevant by the transcriber [Default]
omitted
material omitted by transcriber
- hand**
in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.
- Status**
Optional
Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section ??).

agent

In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

rubbing

damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew

damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke

damage results from smoke

unit

names the unit used for describing the extent of the gap

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Legal values are:

chars

written characters

leaves

leaves

lines

lines

mm

millimetres

pages

pages

words

words

Used by model.global.edit

May contain core: [desc gloss](#)

element
gap

```
{
  attribute
```

reason

```
{
  list
```

Declaration

```
{
  ( "damage" | "illegible" | "cancelled" | "irrelevant" |
"omitted" )+
}
},
attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
att.global.attribute.xmlid,
```



```

att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
attribute unit { "chars" | "leaves" | "lines" | "mm" | "pages" |
"words" }?,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
model.glossLike*
}

```

Example <gap extent="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>

Example <gap extent="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>

Note The [gap](#), [unclear](#), and [del](#) core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the [damage](#) and [supplied](#) elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section ?? for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

4.9.97 <genName>

<genName> (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.personal](#) (@full, @sort) ([att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.persNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration {
element
genName
{
[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
[att.global.attribute.n](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),

```

    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.personal.attribute.full,
    att.personal.attribute.sort,
    att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
    att.canonical.attribute.key,
    att.canonical.attribute.ref,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <persName> <forename>Charles</forename> <genName>II</genName></persName>

Example <persName> <surname>Pitt</surname> <genName>the
Younger</genName></persName>

4.9.98 <geo>

<geo> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation.

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.measureLike](#)

May contain Character data only

```

                                element
                                geo
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    text
}

```

Example <geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo>

All uses of [geo](#) within a document are required to use the same coordinate system, which is that defined by a [geoDecl](#) element supplied in the TEI Header.

Note If no such element is supplied, the assumption is that the content of each [geo](#) element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.

4.9.99 <geoDecl>

<geoDecl> (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the [geo](#) element elsewhere within the document.

Module header

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#)

Attributes (@default)
datum

supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.

Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

WGS84

(World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. [Default]

MGRS

(Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on Universal Transverse Mercator coordinates

OSGB36

(ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

ED50

(European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

Used by [model.encodingPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    geoDecl
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.declarable.attribute.default,
      attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name
    }?,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example `<geoDecl datum="OSGB36"/>`

4.9.100 <geogFeat>

<geogFeat> (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [model.offsetLike](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

                                element
                                geogFeat
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
  macro.xtext
}

```

Example <geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName>

4.9.101 <geogName>

<geogName> (geographical name) a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

type

provides more culture- linguistic- or application- specific information used to categorize this name component.

Attributes Status

Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

xsd:Name

Values

one of a set of codes defined for the application.

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May figures: [formula](#)

contain gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

                element
                geogName
            {
                att.global.attribute.xmlid,
                att.global.attribute.n,
                att.global.attribute.xmllang,
                att.global.attribute.rend,
                att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
                att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
                att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
                att.canonical.attribute.key,
                att.canonical.attribute.ref,
                attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
                macro.phraseSeq
            }
    
```

Example

```

<geogName> <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat> <name>Sinai</name></geogNam
e>
    
```

4.9.102 <gloss>

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls) [att.translatable](#) (@version) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

target

identifies the associated [term](#) element by an absolute or relative URI reference

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a [term](#) element

cRef

Attributes (canonical reference) identifies the associated [term](#) element using a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references

(described in section ??) should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a [term](#) element

Note

The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the decls attribute.

Used by	model.emphLike model.glossLike core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
Declaration	<pre> element gloss { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declaring.attribute.decls, att.translatable.attribute.version, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, (attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }?), macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Example	We may define <code><term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term></code> as <code><gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></code>
Note	The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

4.9.103 <glyph>

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

Module	gaiji
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	charDecl
May contain	core: desc gloss graphic note figures: formula gaiji: charProp glyphName mapping

Declaration	<pre> element glyph { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (glyphName?, model.glossLike*,) } </pre>
-------------	---

```

        charProp*,
        mapping*,
        model.graphicLike*,
        model.noteLike*
    )
}

```

Example `<glyph xml:id="rstroke"> <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName> <charProp>
<localName>entity</localName>
<value>rstroke</value> </charProp> <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/></glyph>`

4.9.104 **<glyphName>**

`<glyphName>` (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.

Module `gaiji`

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [glyph](#)

May contain Character data only

	element glyphName
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, text } </pre>

Example `<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>`

Note For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an Ideographic Description Sequence (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of [glyphNames](#) to facilitate data exchange.

4.9.105 **<graphic>**

`<graphic>` indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR>

Module `core`

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.internetMedia](#) (`@mimeType`) [att.declaring](#) (`@decls`)

Attributes `width`
The display width of the image
Status
Mandatory when applicable

	Datatype
	token { pattern = "[\-
	+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)" }
	height
	The display height of the image
	Status
	Mandatory when applicable
	Datatype
	token { pattern = "[\-
	+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)" }
	scale
	A scale factor to be applied to the image to make it the desired display size
	Status
	Mandatory when applicable
	Datatype
	xsd:double xsd:decimal
	url
	(uniform resource locator) A URL which refers to the image itself.
	Status
	Mandatory when applicable
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
Used by	model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart
May contain	Empty element

	element
	graphic
	{
	att.global.attribute.xmlid ,
	att.global.attribute.n ,
	att.global.attribute.xmllang ,
	att.global.attribute.rend ,
	att.global.attribute.xmlbase ,
	att.global.facs.attribute.facs ,
	att.internetMedia.attribute.mimeType ,
	att.declaring.attribute.decls ,
	attribute
	width
	{
	token
	{
Declaration	+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)" }
	}
	}?,
	attribute
	height
	{
	token
	{
	pattern = "[\-
	+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd rem vw vh vm)" }
	}
	}?,
	attribute scale { xsd:double xsd:decimal }?,
	attribute url { xsd:anyURI }?,
	empty
	}

Example	<code><figure> <graphic url="fig1.png"/> <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc></figure></code>
Note	The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the url attribute.

4.9.106 <group>

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF>

Module textstructure
Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls)
Used by [group text](#)

core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)
linking: [anchor](#)
May contain textstructure: [docAuthor](#) [group text](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    group
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.declaring.attribute.decls,
      (
        ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
        ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
        model.divBottom*
      )
    }

```

Example

```

<egXML><text><!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
<front><!-- biographical notice by editor -->
</front>
<group>
<text><!-- first poem -->
</text>
<text><!-- second poem -->
</text>
</group></text><!-- end of Pope section--></egXML>

```

4.9.107 <handDesc>

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module	msdescription
	In addition to global attributes
	hands
	specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript
Attributes	Status
	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:nonNegativeInteger
Used by	model.physDescPart
	core: p
May contain	header: handNote
	msdescription: summary
Declaration	<pre> element handDesc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute hands { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?, (model.pLike+ (summary?, handNote+)) } </pre>
Example	<pre> <handDesc> <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana formata</term>.</handNote></handDesc> </pre>
Example	<pre> <handDesc hands="2"> <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p></handDesc> </pre>

4.9.108 <handNote>

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module	header
	In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.handFeatures (@scribe, @script, @medium, @scope)
	script
	characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example secretary, copperplate, Chancery, Italian, etc.
	Status
Attributes	Required
	Datatype
	1–∞ occurrences of xsd:Name separated by whitespace
	Legal values are:
	carolmin
	textualis
	cursiva
	hybrida

humbook
humcursiva
other
[Default]

scope
specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.
Status
Required
Legal values are:
sole
[Default]
major
minor

Used by [handDesc](#) [handNotes](#)
core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#)
[graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#)
[ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#)
May contain [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#)
[watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#)
[genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)
[nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#)
[settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#)
[restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

    element
    handNote
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.handFeatures.attribute.scribe,
    attribute
    script
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "carolmin"
        | "textualis"
        | "cursiva"
        | "hybrida"
        | "humbook"
        | "humcursiva"
        | "other"
      )+
    }
  },
  att.handFeatures.attribute.medium,

```

Declaration

```

        attribute scope { "sole" | "major" | "minor" },
        macro.specialPara
    }

```

Example <handNote scope="sole"> <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial
with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed
minuscule.</p></handNote>

4.9.109 <handNotes>

<handNotes> contains one or more [handNote](#) elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH>

Module transcr

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.profileDescPart](#)

May contain header: [handNote](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    handNotes
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        handNote+
    }

```

Example <handNotes> <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate" medium="brown-ink">Carefully written with regular
descenders</handNote> <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print" medium="pencil">Unschooled scrawl</handNote></handNotes>

4.9.110 <handShift>

<handShift> marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH>

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.handFeatures](#) (@scribe, @script, @medium, @scope)

new
identifies the new hand.

Status

Attributes Recommended

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section [??](#)).

	resp
	signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the change of hand.
	Status
	Recommended
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
	Values
	must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter ??).
Used by	model.pPart.msdesc
May contain	Empty element
	<pre> element handShift { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.handFeatures.attribute.scribe, att.handFeatures.attribute.script, att.handFeatures.attribute.medium, att.handFeatures.attribute.scope, attribute new { xsd:anyURI }?, attribute resp { xsd:anyURI }?, empty }</pre>
Declaration	
Example	<pre> <l>When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynn</l><handShift medium="greenish-ink"/><l>And if the cattes skynne be slyk <handShift medium="black-ink"/>and gaye</l></pre>
Note	The handShift element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink

4.9.111 <head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD>

Module	core
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	model.headLike model.pLike.front
May contain	core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio
n

```

      element
      head
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      macro.paraContent
    }

```

The most common use for the [head](#) element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

Example

```

<div1 n="I" type="book"> <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first
book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory,
Bishop of Tours.</head> <list>
<head>Chapter-Headings</head> </list> <div2 type="section">
<head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
<p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
<p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred
and twelve years passed.</p>
<trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred
and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of
Saint Martin.</trailer> </div2></div1>

```

The [head](#) element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists: With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,

Example

```

argument.<list type="simple"> <head>Connectives</head> <item>above</item>
<item>accordingly</item> <item>across from</item> <item>adjacent
to</item> <item>again</item> <item><!-- ... --> </item></list>

```

The [head](#) element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a [head](#) element based on its structural position. A [head](#) occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

4.9.112 <height>

<height> contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the spine. [2.1.4 Dimensions](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)
Used by	dimensions model.measureLike
May contain	gaiji: g

Declaration	<pre> element height { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, macro.xtext } </pre>

Example <height unit="in" quantity="7"/>

4.9.113 <heraldry>

<heraldry> contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [2.1.8 Heraldry](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.pPart.msdesc core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

Declaration	<pre> element heraldry { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, </pre>

```
    <macro.phraseSeq  
  }
```

Example <p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms<heraldry>A bull
passant within a bordure bezanty, in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry>
[Cole], crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>.</p>

4.9.114 <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH>

Module core

In addition to global attributes

rend

(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status

Required

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}\\p{N}\\p{P}\\p{S})+" }separated by whitespace

Values

any string of characters; if the typographic rendition of a text is to be systematically recorded, a systematic set of values for the rend attribute should be defined.

Legal values are:

hyphenated

underline

Attributes

double-underline

bold

caps

italic

sup

rubric

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"> <lb/>To  
The<lb/>Duchesse<lb/>of<lb/>Newcastle,<lb/>On  
Her<lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.</head>
```

Note

These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines.

Used by [model.hiLike](#)

May contain core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#)
[graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#)

[quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
 figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
 gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#)
[material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#)
[width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#)
[geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#)
[orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#)
[restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      hi
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      attribute
      rend
    {
      list
      {
        (
          "hyphenated"
          | "underline"
          | "double-underline"
          | "bold"
          | "caps"
          | "italic"
          | "sup"
          | "rubric"
        )+
      }
    },
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.paraContent
  }

```

Example

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the
 said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of
 the said intended marriage ...

4.9.115 <history>

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part. [2.5 History](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [msDesc](#) [msPart](#)

May contain core: [p](#)

msdescription: [acquisition](#) [origin](#) [provenance](#) [summary](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      history
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,

```

```

    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) )
}

```

Example

```

<history> <origin>
<p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth
century.</p> </origin> <provenance>
<p>Recorded in two medieval catalogues of the books belonging to Durham
Priory, made in 1391 and 1405.</p>
<p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56) and later
belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne) according to
inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p> </provenance> <acquisition>
<p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by Thomas Gale and his son
Roger.</p> </acquisition></history>

```

4.9.116 <idno>

<idno> (identifying number) supplies any standard or non-standard number used to identify a bibliographic item. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI>

Module	header
	In addition to global attributes
	type
	categorizes the number, for example as an ISBN or other standard series.
	Status
Attributes	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Values
	A name or abbreviation indicating what type of identifying number is given (e.g. ISBN, LCCN).
Used by	altIdentifier msIdentifier seriesStmt model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart
May contain	Character data only

	element
	idno
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, text } </pre>

Example <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno><idno type="OTA">116</idno>

4.9.117 <incipit>

<incipit> contains the incipit of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used as a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
[att.msExcerpt](#) (@defective)

Used by [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    incipit
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      att.msExcerpt.attribute.defective,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example

```

<incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit><incipit defective="true">tatem
dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit><incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse
dagelix broet</incipit><incipit>O ongehoerde gewerdighe
christi</incipit><incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit><incipit>Ideo dicit
firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest</incipit>

```

4.9.118 <index>

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.spanning](#) (@spanTo)

Attributes indexName

supplies a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.
Status

	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Values
	an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters only.
	Note
	This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.
Used by	index model.global.meta
May contain	core: index term
Declaration	<pre> element index { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.spanning.attribute.spanTo, attribute indexName { xsd:Name }?, (term, index?) * } </pre>
Example	<p>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen<index indexName="NAMES"> <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term></index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura<index indexName="PLACES"> <term>Sura</term></index> was David's own first cousin.</p>

4.9.119 <institution>

<institution> contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.naming (@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Used by	altIdentifier msIdentifier
May contain	gaiji: g

Declaration	<pre> element institution { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, macro.xtext } </pre>
-------------	--

Example <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of

Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS.
Bodley 406</idno></msIdentifier>

4.9.120 <item>

<item> contains one component of a list. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [list](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration
n

```

    element
    item
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.specialPara
  }

```

Example

```

<list type="ordered"> <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book
IV</head> <item n="4.1">The death of Queen
Clotild.</item> <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one
third of the Church revenues.</item> <item n="4.3">The wives and children of
Lothar.</item> <item n="4.4">The Counts of the
Bretons.</item> <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the
Bishop.</item> <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item> <item> ...</item></list>

```

May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Note

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the n attribute on the [item](#) element is by definition synonymous with the use of the [label](#) element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the [label](#) element, not n.

4.9.121 <keywords>

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43>

Module	header
	In addition to global attributes
	scheme
	identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined.
	Status
Attributes	Required
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
	Values
	Usually this will indicate an external website or other location where the scheme is documented.
Used by	textClass
May contain	core: list term
Declaration	<pre> element keywords { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }, (term+ list) } </pre>
Example	<pre> <keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net"> <list> <item>Babbage, Charles</item> <item>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</item> </list></keywords> </pre>

4.9.122 <|>

<|> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL>

Module	core
	In addition to global attributes
	part
	specifies whether or not the line is metrically complete.
	Status
Attributes	Mandatory when applicable
	Legal values are:
	Y
	(yes) the line is metrically incomplete
	N

(no) either the line is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

I

(initial) the initial part of an incomplete line

M

(medial) a medial part of an incomplete line

F

(final) the final part of an incomplete line

Note

The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the line is to be reconstituted.

Used by

[model.lLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

May
contain

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      1
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
      macro.paraContent
    }

```

Example

<l met="-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>

4.9.123 <label>

<label> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [list](#) [model.labelLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May
contain

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio
n

```

        element
        label
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global `xml:lang` attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

Example

```

<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm"> <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
<headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle
English</headLabel> <headItem xml:lang="en">New
English</headItem> <label>nu</label> <item xml:lang="en">now</item> <label>
lhude</label> <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item> <label>bloweth</label> <it
em xml:lang="en">blooms</item> <label>med</label> <item xml:lang="en">m
eadow</item> <label>wude</label> <item xml:lang="en">wood</item> <label>
awe</label> <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item> <label>lhouth</label> <item xml
:lang="en">lows</item> <label>sterteth</label> <item xml:lang="en">bounds,
frisks (cf. <cit>
<ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
<quote>a courser,
<term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
</cit> </item> <label>verteth</label> <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item> <label>
murie</label> <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item> <label>swik</label> <item
xml:lang="en">cease</item> <label>naver</label> <item xml:lang="en">never
</item></list>

```

Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's Autobiography. In this usage the [label](#) element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the [item](#) element:

Example

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.<list rend="runon" type="ordered"> <label>(1)</label> <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item> <label>(2)</label> <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item></list>

Example

Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

<list type="gloss"> <label>March 1757.</label> <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item> <label>March 8th.</label> <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item> <label>June.</label> <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <q xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</q> </item> <label>August.</label> <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item></list>

4.9.124 <langKnowledge>

<langKnowledge> (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of [langKnown](#) elements.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

tags

supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of xsd:language separated by whitespace

Note

This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no [langKnown](#) children. Its values are language ‘tags’ as defined in [RFC 4646](#) or its successor

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

May core: [p](#)

contain namesdates: [langKnown](#)

element
langKnowledge

Declaration
n

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  attribute tags { list { xsd:language+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike | langKnown+ )
}
```

}

Example <langKnowledge tags="en-GB fr"> <p>British English and
French</p></langKnowledge>

Example <langKnowledge> <langKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British
English</langKnown> <langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown><
/langKnowledge>

4.9.125 <langKnown>

<langKnown> (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

tag

supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.

Status

Required

Attributes Datatype

xsd:language

Note

The value for this attribute should be a language 'tag' as defined in [BCP 47](#).

level

a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language

Status

Optional

Datatype

token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }

Used by [langKnowledge](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

May contain [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
langKnown

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,

```

Declaration

```

att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
attribute tag { xsd:language },
attribute level { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
}?,
macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

Example <langKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British
English</langKnown><langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>

4.9.126 <langUsage>

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default)

Used by [model.profileDescPart](#)

May contain header: [language](#)

	<pre> element langUsage { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declarable.attribute.default, language+ } </pre>
Declaration	

Example <langUsage> <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language> <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language> <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language></langUsage>

4.9.127 <language>

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41>

Module	<p>header</p> <p>In addition to global attributes</p> <p>ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global <code>xml:lang</code> attribute.</p> <p>Status Required</p> <p>Datatype <code>xsd:language</code></p>
Attributes	<p>usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }</code></p> <p>Values a whole number between 0 and 100</p>
Used by	<p>langUsage</p> <p>core: abbr cb choice date expan foreign gap gloss index lb milestone name note pb ptr ref term title</p> <p>linking: anchor</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift space subst</p>
Declaration	<pre> element language { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute ident { xsd:language }, attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?, macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>
Example	<pre> <langUsage xml:lang="en-US"> <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language> <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language> <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language></langUsage> </pre>
Note	<p>Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.</p>

4.9.128 <layout>

<layout> describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module	<p>msdescription</p> <p>In addition to global attributes</p> <p>columns</p> <p>specifies the number of columns per page</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Required</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>1–2 occurrences of <code>xsd:nonNegativeInteger</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>may be given as a pair of numbers (to indicate a range) or as a single number.</p> <p>ruledLines</p> <p>specifies the number of ruled lines per column</p> <p>Status</p>
Attributes	<p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>1–2 occurrences of <code>xsd:nonNegativeInteger</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>may be given as a pair of numbers (a range) or as a single number.</p> <p>writtenLines</p> <p>specifies the number of written lines per column</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>1–2 occurrences of <code>xsd:nonNegativeInteger</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>may be given as a pair of numbers (a range), or as a single number.</p>
Used by	<p>layoutDesc</p> <p>core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>

Declaration	{	element
		layout
	attribute	columns

```

{
  list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
},
attribute
    ruledLines
{
  list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
}?,
attribute
    writtenLines
{
  list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
}?,
att.global.attribute.xmlid,
att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
macro.specialPara
}

```

Example `<layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</layout>`

Example `<layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"> <p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule between the columns.</p></layout>`

Example `<layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50"> <p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.</p></layout>`

4.9.129 **<layoutDesc>**

`<layoutDesc>` (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [objectDesc](#)

May contain core: [p](#)
msdescription: [layout](#)

Declaration

```

element
layoutDesc
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.pLike+ | layout+ )
}

```

Example `<layoutDesc> <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p></layoutDesc>`

Example `<layoutDesc> <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">`

`<p>`
`<locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/> 2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with central rule between the`

```
columns.</p> </layout> <layout columns="3">
<p>
<locus from="f16"/>Prickings for three columns are
visible.</p> </layout></layoutDesc>
```

4.9.130 <lb>

<lb> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
ed
(edition) indicates the edition or version in which the line break is located at this point

Attributes Status
Recommended
Datatype
xsd:anyURI

Values
Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

Used by [model.milestoneLike](#)

May contain Empty element

```

                                element
                                lb
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute ed { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}
```

Indicating typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

Example <l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="e2"/> and<lb ed="e1"/> the
Fruit</l><l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="e1 e2"/> mortal
tast</l><l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="e1"/> and
all<lb ed="e2"/> our woe,</l>

Indicating line structure of title page, display text, etc.:

Example <docTitle> <titlePart type="main">
<lb/>THE <lb/>Pilgrim's Progress <lb/>FROM <lb/>THIS
WORLD, <lb/>TO <lb/>That which is to come: </titlePart><!-- etc. -->
></docTitle>

Note By convention, [lb](#) elements should appear at the point in the text where a

new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next **lb** element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the **l** element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the linebreak in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

4.9.131 <lg>

<lg> (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.divLike](#) (@org, @sample, @part) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [lg model.divPart](#)

core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [l](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain textstructure: [docAuthor](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

element
lg

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | lg | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

<lg type="free"> <l>Let me be my own fool</l> <l>of my own making, the
sum of it</l></lg><lg type="free"> <l>is equivocal.</l> <l>One says of the
drunken farmer:</l></lg><lg type="free"> <l>leave him lay off it. And this
is</l> <l>the explanation.</l></lg>

Note

contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

4.9.132 <list>

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI>

Module core

In addition to global attributes

type

describes the form of the list.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

ordered

Attributes

list items are numbered or lettered.

bulleted

list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

simple

list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

gloss

each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

Note

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows [label](#) tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Used by

[keywords](#) [revisionDesc](#) [model.listLike](#)

core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [head](#) [index](#) [item](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)

May contain

linking: [anchor](#)

textstructure: [docAuthor](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

element

list

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" |
xsd:Name }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | ( ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+ )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Declaration

Example

```
<list type="ordered"> <item>a butcher</item> <item>a baker</item> <item>a
candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">
<item>rings on his fingers</item>
<item>bells on his toes</item>
```

</list> </item></list>

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section"> <head>Athelstan's
Ordinance</head> <list type="ordered">
<item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is
caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over eightpence.
<list type="ordered">
<item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account — or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
<item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to
escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than
twelve].</item>
<item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days,
and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to
stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item>
<item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild, or to bring him back there.</item>
<item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild, whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as
a fine.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one should order
their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in
public meeting.
<list type="ordered">
<item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who
encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.</item>
<item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with
his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice
and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and 120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the
king before he demands justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine
as the other would have done, if he had refused him justice.
<list type="ordered">
<item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave,
and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to
his wergild on the first occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be
liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
```

Example

```
<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves,
who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to
liable to the same.</item>
```

```
</list>
```

```
</item>
```

```
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if
he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold
ordeal.</item> </list></div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of
the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this
page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross.<list type="simple">
```

```
<item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document
with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with
the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
```

```
<item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of
the Holy Cross.</item> </list></p>
```

Example

Note

May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

4.9.133 <listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [additional](#) [listBibl](#) [model.listLike](#) [model.msItemPart](#)

May core: [bibl](#) [head](#) [listBibl](#)

contain msdescription: [msDesc](#)

	<pre> element listBibl { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declarable.attribute.default, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, (<u>model.headLike</u>*, (<u>model.biblLike</u> <u>listBibl</u>)+) } </pre>
Declaration	

	<pre> <listBibl> <head>Works consulted</head> <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) </bibl> <biblStruct> <analytic> <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title> </analytic> <monogr> <title>The Penny Histories</title> <author>Victor E Neuberg</author> <imprint> <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date> </imprint> </monogr> </biblStruct></listBibl> </pre>
Example	

4.9.134 <listOrg>

<listOrg> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG>

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default)
Used by	listOrg model.listLike
May contain	core: head namesdates: listOrg org relation relationGrp

	<pre> element listOrg { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.declarable.attribute.default, (<u>model.headLike</u>*, (<u>org</u> <u>listOrg</u>)+, (<u>relationGrp</u> <u>relation</u>)*) } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<pre> <listOrg> <head>Libyans</head> <org> <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName> <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of bronze [...] </desc> </org> <org> <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName> <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the palms [...]</desc> </org> <org> <orgName>Garamantians</orgName> <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc><!-- ... --> </org></listOrg> </pre>
Note	<p>The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.</p>

4.9.135 <listPerson>

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default)
Used by	listPerson model.listLike
May contain	core: head namesdates: listPerson org person personGrp relation relationGrp

Declaration	<pre> element listPerson { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.declarable.attribute.default, (model.headLike*, (model.personLike listPerson)+, (relation relationGrp)*) } </pre>
-------------	--

Example	<pre> <listPerson type="respondents"> <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/> <person xml :id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/> <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mi d"/> <relationGrp> <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/> </relationGrp></listPerson> </pre>
---------	--

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

4.9.136 <listPlace>

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.declarable](#) (@default)

Used by [listPlace](#) [place](#) [model.listLike](#)

May core: [head](#)

contain namesdates: [listPlace](#) [place](#) [relation](#) [relationGrp](#)

```

element
listPlace
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+,
    ( relationGrp | relation )*
  )
}

```

Example <listPlace type="offshoreIslands"> <place>
<placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName> </place> <place>
<placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName> </place></listPlace>

4.9.137 <localName>

<localName> (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [charProp](#)

May contain Character data only

```

element
localName
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  text
}

```

Example <localName>daikanwa</localName><localName>entity</localName>

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

4.9.138 <location>

<location> defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of a other named geo-political entities, or as an address.

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
[att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source)
([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.placeTraitLike](#)

core: [bibl](#) [desc](#) [label](#) [note](#)
msdescription: [depth](#) [height](#) [msDesc](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [offset](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)

element
location

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  (
    model.labelLike
|model.placeNamePart
|model.offsetLike
|model.measureLike
|model.addressLike
|model.noteLike
|model.biblLike
  ) *
}
```

Example <place> <placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName> <location>

Example	<pre> <geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo> </location></place> <place type="building"> <placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName> <location> <country key="FR"/> <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement> <district type="arrondissement">Perrache</district> <placeName type="street">Rue de la Charité</placeName> </location></place> </pre>
Example	<pre> <place type="imaginary"> <placeName>Atlantis</placeName> <location> <offset>beyond</offset> <placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName> </placeName> </location></place> </pre>

4.9.139 <locus>

<locus> defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [2.1.5 References to Locations within a Manuscript](#)

Module	<p>msdescription</p> <p>In addition to global attributes</p> <p>scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype xsd:anyURI</p> <p>Values A pointer to some foliation element which defines the foliation scheme used, or an external link to some equivalent resource.</p> <p>from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p>
Attributes	<p>Datatype token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" }</p> <p>Values typically this will be a page number</p> <p>to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" }</p> <p>Values typically this will be a page number</p> <p>target supplies a link to one or more transcriptions of the specified range of folios.</p> <p>Status</p>

	Optional Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of <code>xsd:anyURI</code> separated by whitespace
Used by	msItem model.pPart.msdesc
May contain	gaiji: g
Declaration	<pre> element locus { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute scheme { <code>xsd:anyURI</code> }?, attribute from { token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" } }?, }?, attribute to { token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" } }?, attribute target { list { <code>xsd:anyURI</code>+ } }?, macro.xtext } </pre>
Example	<pre> <!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1"> <locus target="#F1r #F1v #F2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus> <author>Ben Jonson</author> <title>Ode to himself</title> <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric> <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit> <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit> <bibl> <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl></msItem><!-- within transcription ... --><pb xml:id="F1r"/><!-- ... --><pb xml:id="F1v"/><!-- ... --><pb xml:id="F2r"/><!-- ... --> </pre> <p>The <code>facs</code> attribute is available globally when the <code>transcr</code> module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:</p> <pre> <msItem> <locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg images/10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus> <title>Birds Praise of Love</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>1506</biblScope> </bibl></msItem> </pre>
Note	<p>The <code>target</code> attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a locus element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global <code>facs</code> attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the <code>target</code> attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The <code>facs</code> attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the surface, zone element, graphic, or <code><binaryObject></code> elements.</p>

4.9.140 <mapping>

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the `type` attribute.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [char](#) [glyph](#)

May
contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

                                element
                                mapping
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext
}
```

Example <mapping type="modern">r</mapping><mapping type="standard">□</mapping>

Note Suggested values for the type attribute include **exact** for exact equivalences, **uppercase** for uppercase equivalences, **lowercase** for lowercase equivalences, and **simplified** for simplified characters. The [g](#) elements contained by this element can point to either another [char](#) or [glyph](#) element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

4.9.141 <material>

<material> contains a word or phrase describing the material of which a manuscript (or part of a manuscript) is composed. [2.1.1 Origination](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May
contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

                                element
                                material
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,

```

Declaration

```
    <macro.phraseSeq  
  }
```

Example <physDesc><p> <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a
 <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p></physDesc>

4.9.142 <milestone>

<milestone> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

ed

(edition) indicates the edition or version to which the milestone applies.

Status

Recommended

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

unit

provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status

Required

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

page

Attributes physical page breaks (synonymous with the [pb](#) element).

column

column breaks.

line

line breaks (synonymous with the [lb](#) element).

book

any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem

individual poems in a collection.

canto

cantos or other major sections of a poem.

speaker

changes of speaker or narrator.

stanza

stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act

acts within a play.

scene

scenes within a play or act.

section

sections of any kind.

absent

passages not present in the reference edition.

unnumbered
passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

Note

If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value `absent` may be used as the value of `unit`. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next [milestone](#) tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the *Stephanus* numbers in *Plato*).

Used by [model.milestoneLike](#)

May contain Empty element

```

        element
        milestone
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.typed.attribute.type,
        att.typed.attribute.subtype,
        attribute ed { xsd:anyURI }?,
        attribute
            unit
        {
            "page"
            | "column"
            | "line"
            | "book"
            | "poem"
            | "canto"
            | "speaker"
            | "stanza"
            | "act"
            | "scene"
            | "section"
            | "absent"
            | "unnumbered"
            | xsd:Name
        },
        empty
    }

```

Declaration

Example `<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>`
`...<milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...`

For this element, the global `n` attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value `unnumbered` should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Note

4.9.143 <msContents>

`<msContents>` (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.

2.3 Intellectual Content

Module	msdescription
	In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.msExcerpt (@defective)
	class
	identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this object.
	Status
Attributes	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:anyURI
	Values
	One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a text classification element supplied in the TEI Header textClass element.
Used by	msDesc msPart
May contain	core: p
	msdescription: msItem summary textLang
	<pre> element msContents { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.msExcerpt.attribute.defective, attribute class { xsd:anyURI }?, (model.pLike+ (summary?, textLang?, msItem+)) } </pre>
Declaration	
n	
Example	<pre> <msContents> <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p></msContents> <msContents> <msItem n="1"> <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus> <title>An ABC</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>239</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="2"> <locus>fols. 7v-8v</locus> <title xml:lang="FR">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>3747</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="3"> <locus>fol. 8v</locus> <title>Truth</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>809</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="4"> <locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus> </pre>
Example	

```
<title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope>1506</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="5">
<locus>fols. 10v-11v</locus>
<title xml:lang="LA">De amico ad amicum</title>
<title xml:lang="LA">Responcio</title>
<bibl>
<title>IMEV</title>
<biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
</bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="6">
<locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
<title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
<note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note> </msItem></msContents>
```

4.9.144 <msDesc>

<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript. «#msov»

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes

xml:id

(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status

Required

Datatype

xsd:ID

Values

any valid XML identifier.

Note

The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [??](#).

xml:lang

Attributes (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to [BCP 47](#)

Status

Required

Datatype

xsd:language

Values

The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-) it should, and if not it may, match the value of an ident attribute of a [language](#) element supplied in the TEI Header of the current document.

Note

If no value is specified for xml:lang, the xml:lang value for the immediately enclosing element is inherited; for this reason, a value should always be

specified on the outermost element ([TEI](#)).

Used by [model.biblLike](#)

May contain core: [head p](#)
msdescription: [additional](#) [history](#) [msContents](#) [msIdentifier](#) [msPart](#) [physDesc](#)

```

element
msDesc
{
  attribute xml:id { xsd:ID },
  att.global.attribute.n,
  attribute xml:lang { xsd:language },
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  Declaration
  (
    msIdentifier,
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}

```

```

<msDesc> <msIdentifier>
<settlement>Oxford</settlement>
<repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
<idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D.
169.</idno> </msIdentifier> <msContents>
<msItem>
<author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>
<title>The Canterbury Tales</title>
Example </msItem> </msContents> <physDesc>
<objectDesc>
<p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx    28 by 19 inches,
and containing 24 quires.</p>
<p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>
<p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44    folios
being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the    remainder is for the
most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>
</objectDesc> </physDesc></msDesc>

```

4.9.145 <msIdentifier>

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [msDesc](#) [model.biblPart](#)

May header: [idno](#)
contain msdescription: [altIdentifier](#) [collection](#) [institution](#) [msName](#) [repository](#)
namesdates: [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [geogName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [settlement](#)

```

Declarati
on
{
  element
  msIdentifier

```

```

    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    (
      (
        (
          model.placeNamePart sequenceOptional,
          institution?,
          repository,
          collection?,
          idno?
        )
        | msName
      ),
      ( altIdentifier | msName ) *
    )
  }

```

Example `<msIdentifier> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno></msIdentifier>`

4.9.146 **<msItem>**

`<msItem>` (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.msExcerpt](#) (`@defective`)

class

identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item

Status

Attributes Optional

Datatype

`xsd:anyURI`

Values

One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a text classification element supplied in the TEI Header [textClass](#) element.

Used by [msContents](#) [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [author](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [editor](#) [gap](#) [graphic](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [quote](#) [respStmt](#) [title](#)

figures: [figure](#)

May linking: [anchor](#)

contain msdescription: [colophon](#) [decoNote](#) [explicit](#) [filiation](#) [finalRubric](#) [incipit](#) [locus](#) [msItem](#) [rubric](#) [textLang](#)

textstructure: [docAuthor](#) [docEdition](#) [docImprint](#) [docTitle](#) [titlePart](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

element
msItem

Declaratio
n {
[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
[att.global.attribute.n](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),
[att.global.attribute.rend](#),


```

att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.msExcerpt.attribute.defective,
attribute class { xsd:anyURI }?,
(
  locus?,
  (
    model.pLike+
  ) | ( model.titlepagePart | model.msItemPart | model.global )+
)
)
}

```

Example

```

<msItem> <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus> <title>Agrim af Noregs konunga
sögum</title> <incipit>regi oc h<expan>ann</expan>
setiho <gap reason="illegible" extent="7"/>sc heim se<expan>m</expan>
þio</incipit> <explicit>h<expan>on</expan> hev<expan>er</expan>
<expan>oc</expan>þa buit hesta .ij. aNan við fé
enh<expan>on</expan>o<expan>m</expan> aNan til
reiþ<expan>ar</expan> </explicit> <textLang mainLang="ONI">Old
Norse/Icelandic</textLang></msItem>

```

4.9.147 <msName>

<msName> (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an ‘ocellus nominum’, or nickname. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	msIdentifier
May contain	gaiji: g

Declaration	<pre> element msName { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.xtext } </pre>
-------------	---

Example

```

<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>

```

4.9.148 <msPart>

<msPart> (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript. [2.7 Manuscript Parts](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	msDesc msPart
May contain	core: head p msdescription: additional altIdentifier history msContents msPart physDesc

Declaration

```

        element
        msPart
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        (
            altIdentifier,
            model.headLike*,
            (
                model.pLike+
                | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
            )
        )
    }

```

Example

```

<msDesc> <msIdentifier>
<settlement>Amiens</settlement>
<repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
<idno>MS 3</idno>
<msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName> </msIdentifier><!-- other
elements here --> <msPart>
<altIdentifier>
<idno>MS 6</idno>
</altIdentifier><!-- other information specific to this part here --
> </msPart><!-- more parts here --></msDesc>

```

4.9.149 <musicNotation>

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.physDescPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#)
[graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#)
[quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        musicNotation
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,

```

```

        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        macro.specialPara
    }

```

Example <musicNotation> <p>Square notation of 4-line red
 staves.</p></musicNotation>

Example <musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall
 type.</musicNotation>

4.9.150 <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status

Required

Attributes Datatype
 xsd:Name

Legal values are:

person

place

org

unknown

[Default]

Used by [model.nameLike.agent](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
contain [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
name

Declaratio
n {
 [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
 [att.global.attribute.n](#),
 [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),
 [att.global.attribute.rend](#),
 [att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#),

```

att.global.attribute.facs,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
attribute type { "person" | "place" | "org" | "unknown" },
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
macro.phraseSeq
}

```

- Example `<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name><name type="place">Villingaholt</name><name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name><name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>`
- Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with [persName](#), [placeName](#), or [orgName](#), when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

4.9.151 <nameLink>

<nameLink> contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.persNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

element
nameLink
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example `<persName> <forename>Frederick</forename> <nameLink>van der</nameLink> <surname>Tronck</surname></persName>`

Example `<persName> <forename>Alfred</forename> <nameLink>de</nameLink> <urn`

ame>Musset</surname></persName>

4.9.152 <nationality>

<nationality> contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp,

Attributes @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
nationality

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example <nationality key="US" notBefore="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in
1966</nationality>

4.9.153 <note>

<note> contains a note or annotation. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO>

Module	<p>core</p> <p>In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.placement (@place)</p> <p>type describes the type of note.</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype xsd:Name Values Values can be taken from any convenient typology of annotation suitable to the work in hand; e.g. annotation, gloss, citation, digression, preliminary, temporary</p> <p>resp (responsible party) indicates who is responsible for the annotation: author, editor, translator, etc.</p> <p>Status Required when applicable Datatype xsd:anyURI Values a pointer to one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, encoding, or annotation</p>
Attributes	<p>Note For specialized types of editorial annotation (e.g. for marking corrections, normalizations, cruxes, etc.), see chapter ??.</p> <p>anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.</p> <p>Status Optional Datatype xsd:boolean Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by</p>

prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the n attribute.

target

indicates the point (or points) of attachment for a note, or the beginning of the span to which the note is attached.

Status

Required when applicable

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

reference to the `xml:id`s of element(s) which begin at the location in question (e.g. the `xml:id` of an [anchor](#) element).

Note

If target and targetEnd are to be used to indicate where notes attach to the text, then elements at the appropriate locations ([anchor](#) elements if necessary) must be given `xml:id` values to be pointed at.

targetEnd

points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status

Required when applicable

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

reference to the `xml:id`(s) of element(s) which *end* at the location(s) in question, or to an empty element at the point in question.

Used by

[altIdentifier](#) [model.noteLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
note

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,

```

Declaration

```

att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.placement.attribute.place,
attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
attribute resp { xsd:anyURI }?,
attribute anchored { xsd:boolean }?,
attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
attribute targetEnd { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
macro.specialPara
}

```

Example And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly<note type="gloss"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. (Tr.)</note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.

Note The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century,<note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54.</note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.
However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

4.9.154 <notesStmt>

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [fileDesc](#)

May contain core: [note](#)

```

element
notesStmt
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  model.noteLike+
}

```

Declarati
on

Example `<notesStmt> <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note> <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note></notesStmt>`

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

4.9.155 **<objectDesc>**

`<objectDesc>` contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [2.4.1 Object Description](#)

Module `msdescription`

In addition to global attributes
form

a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.

Status

Required

Datatype

`xsd:Name`

Values

Attributes a short project-defined name

Legal values are:

`codex`

a bound codex [Default]

`leaf`

a loose leaf

`scroll`

a scroll

`other`

any other format

Used by [model.physDescPart](#)

May core: [p](#)

contain `msdescription`: [layoutDesc](#) [supportDesc](#)

element
`objectDesc`

Declaration
n

```
{
  attribute form { "codex" | "leaf" | "scroll" | "other" },
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) )
}
```

Example

```
<objectDesc form="codex"> <supportDesc material="mixed">
  <p>Early modern
  <material>parchment</material> and
  <material>paper</material>.</p> </supportDesc> <layoutDesc>
  <layout ruledLines="25 32"/> </layoutDesc></objectDesc>
```

4.9.156 <occupation>

<occupation> contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

scheme

identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use by supplying the identifier of a [taxonomy](#) element elsewhere in the header.

Status

Optional

Datatype

Attributes xsd:anyURI

Values

must identify a [taxonomy](#) element
code

identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the scheme attribute.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

Must identify a [category](#) element

Used by [model.persStateLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
occupation

Declaration
n
[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
[att.global.attribute.n](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),
[att.global.attribute.rend](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#),
[att.global.facs.attribute.facs](#),
[att.datable.w3c.attribute.period](#),
[att.datable.w3c.attribute.when](#),

```

att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
attribute code { xsd:anyURI }?,
macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <occupation>accountant</occupation>

Example <occupation scheme="#rg" code="#acc">accountant</occupation>

Example <occupation scheme="#rg" code="#acc">accountant with specialist knowledge
of oil industry</occupation>

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal
specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement
the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

4.9.157 <offset>

<offset> that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of
the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.offsetLike](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

{
  element
  offset
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    macro.xtext
  }
}

```

Example <placeName key="NRPA1"> <offset>50 metres below the summit
of</offset> <geogName>

```
<geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>
<name>Sinai</name> </geogName></placeName>
```

4.9.158 <org>

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

role

specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}\\p{N}\\p{P}\\p{S})+" } separated by whitespace

Values

one or more keywords separated by spaces

Used by [listOrg](#) [model.personLike](#)

core: [bibl](#) [desc](#) [head](#) [label](#) [name](#) [note](#) [p](#)

msdescription: [msDesc](#)

May
contain

namesdates: [addName](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [org](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [person](#) [personGrp](#) [place](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

element
org

Declaratio
n

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  attribute

  role
  {
    list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}\\p{N}\\p{P}\\p{S})+" }+ }
  }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
```

```

        ( model.pLike* )
    | ( model.labelLike | model.nameLike | model.placeLike ) *
),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *,
    model.personLike*
)
}

```

- Example `<org xml:id="JAMs"> <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName> <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the <name>Leif Ericson</name> </desc> <bibl> <author>Robert Shea</author> <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author> <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title> </bibl></org>`
- Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the [model.personPart](#) class.

4.9.159 `<orgName>`

`<orgName>` (organization name) contains an organizational name. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG>

Module `namesdates`

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.personal](#) (@full, @sort) ([att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.nameLike.agent](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
 figures: [formula](#)
 gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio
n

```

{
    element
    orgName
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,

```

```

att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.personal.attribute.full,
att.personal.attribute.sort,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in
the<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary"> <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyl
a.</placeName> Abolition Society</orgName>....

4.9.160 <orig>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#) [model.choicePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
orig

Declaration {
[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
[att.global.attribute.n](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),
[att.global.attribute.rend](#),
[att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#),

```

    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.paraContent
}

```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, [orig](#) may be used alone:
`<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l><l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>`

More usually, an [orig](#) will be combined with a regularized form within a [choice](#) element:

Example `<l>But this will be a <choice>
 <orig>meere</orig>
 <reg>mere</reg> </choice> confusion</l><l>And hardly shall we all be
 <choice>
 <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
 <reg>understood</reg> </choice></l>`

4.9.161 <origDate>

<origDate> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [2.1.1 Origination](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
[att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

May contain Character data only

```

                                element
                                origDate
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,

```

Declaration

```

    text
  }

```

Example `<origDate notBefore="-0300" notAfter="-0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>`

4.9.162 `<origPlace>`

`<origPlace>` (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [2.1.1 Origination](#)

Module `msdescription`

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Attributes [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) [att.editLike](#) (`@cert`, `@resp`, `@evidence`, `@source`) ([att.dimensions](#) (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@scope`))

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

    element
    origPlace
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    macro.xtext
  }

```

Example `<origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace>`

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of ‘origin’, for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.

4.9.163 `<origin>`

`<origin>` contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part. [2.5 History](#)

Module `msdescription`

Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.editLike (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
Used by	history core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

	<div> <div>element</div> <div>origin</div> </div> <pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, macro.specialPara } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<pre> <origin notBefore="1802" notAfter="1845" evidence="internal" resp="#AMH"> Copied in <name type="origPlace">Derby</name>, probably from an old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to <persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>.</origin> </pre>
---------	--

4.9.164 <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL>

Module	core
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.pLike core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
May contain	
Declaration	<pre> element p { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.paraContent } </pre>
Example	<p><p>Hallgerd was outside.<q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.<q>What have you done?</q></p><p><q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.</p><p><q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.</p><p><q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf.<q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q></p></p>

4.9.165 <pb>

<pb> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5>

Module	core
Attributes	In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) ed (edition) indicates the edition or version in which the page break is located at this point
Used by	Status Recommended Datatype xsd:anyURI Values Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.
Used by	model.milestoneLike

May
contain

Empty element

element
pb

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute ed { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p>...<pb n="145" ed="ed2"/><!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here -->
...<pb n="283" ed="ed1"/><!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ...</p>
```

Example

A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the facs attribute

```
<TEI> <teiHeader><!--...--> </teiHeader> <text>
<pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/><!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the
text it contains is encoded here -->
<pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/><!-- similarly, for page 2 --> </text></TEI>
```

Note

By convention, [pb](#) elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the [pb](#) element itself.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

4.9.166 <persName>

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including any or all of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.personal](#) (@full, @sort) ([att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.persStateLike](#) [model.nameLike.agent](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

May
contain

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
[namesdates](#): [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
[transcr](#): [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element persName { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.personal.attribute.full, att.personal.attribute.sort, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<pre> <persName> <forename>Edward</forename> <forename>George</forename> < surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of <placeName>Knebworth</placeName> </roleName></persName> </pre>
---------	--

4.9.167 <person>

<person> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Attributes role

specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

Status

Optional

	<p>Datatype</p> <p>1–∞ occurrences of <code>xsd:Name</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file</p> <p>sex</p> <p>specifies the sex of the person.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Required</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>"0" "1" "2" "9"</p> <p>age</p> <p>specifies an age group for the person.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p><code>xsd:Name</code></p> <p>Values</p> <p>the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file; possibilities include infant, child, teen, adult, and senior.</p>
Used by	<p>model.personLike</p> <p>core: bibl cb gap index lb milestone note p pb</p>
May contain	<p>linking: anchor</p> <p>namesdates: affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus trait</p> <p>transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw space</p>
Declaration	<pre> element person { attribute role { list { xsd:Name+ } }?, attribute sex { "0" "1" "2" "9" }, attribute age { xsd:Name }?, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, (model.pLike+ (model.personPart model.global) *) } </pre>
Example	<p><person sex="2" age="mid"> <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.</p>

Example	<p>Socio-Economic status B2.</p></person></p> <pre><person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet"> <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid </persName> <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName> <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName> <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement> <country key="IT">Italy</country> </placeName> </birth> <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName> <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement> <country key="RO">Romania</country> </placeName> </death></person></pre>
Note	<p>May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class.</p>

4.9.168 <personGrp>

<personGrp> (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module	<p>namesdates</p> <p>In addition to global attributes</p> <p>role</p> <p>specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Values</p> <p>the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file</p> <p>sex</p> <p>specifies the sex of the participant group.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p>
Attributes	<p>Datatype</p> <p>("0" "1" "2" "9") "mixed"</p> <p>age</p> <p>specifies the age group of the participants.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Values</p> <p>the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file</p> <p>size</p> <p>specifies the size or approximate size of the group.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p>

	1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" }separated by whitespace
	Values may contain a number and an indication of accuracy, e.g. approx 200
Used by	model.personLike
	core: bibl p
May contain	namesdates: affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus trait
Declaration	<pre> element personGrp { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute role { xsd:Name }?, attribute sex { ("0" "1" "2" "9") "mixed" }?, attribute age { xsd:Name }?, attribute size { list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" }+ } }?, (model.pLike+ model.personPart*) } </pre>
Example	<code><personGrp xml:id="pg1" role="audience" sex="mixed" size="approx 50"/></code>
Note	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination. The global xml:id attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the who attribute is specified on individual utterances.

4.9.169 <physDesc>

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialised elements from the model.physDescPart class. [2.4 Physical Description](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [msDesc](#) [msPart](#)

core: [p](#)

May contain msdescription: [accMat](#) [additions](#) [bindingDesc](#) [decoDesc](#) [handDesc](#) [musicNotation](#) [objectDesc](#) [sealDesc](#) [typeDesc](#)

Declaration	<pre> element physDesc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (model.pLike*, model.physDescPart sequenceOptional) } </pre>
-------------	--

}

```
<physDesc> <objectDesc form="codex">
<supportDesc material="perg">
<support>Parchment.</support>
<extent>i + 55 leaves
<dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="inch">
<height>7Â¼</height>
<width>5â??</width>
</dimensions>
</extent>
</supportDesc>
<layoutDesc>
<layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
</layoutDesc> </objectDesc> <handDesc>
<p>Written in more than one hand.</p> </handDesc> <decoDesc>
<p>With a few coloured capitals.</p> </decoDesc></physDesc>
```

Example

4.9.170 <place>

<place> contains data about a geographic location

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Attributes [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.placeLike](#)

core: [bibl](#) [desc](#) [head](#) [label](#) [note](#) [p](#)

May msdescription: [msDesc](#)

contain namesdates: [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [event](#) [geogName](#) [listPlace](#) [location](#) [place](#) [placeName](#) [population](#) [region](#) [settlement](#) [trait](#)

element
place

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
    )
  )
}
```

Declaration
n


```

    | (
      model.labelLike
      | model.placeStateLike
      | model.placeTraitLike
      | model.placeEventLike
    ) *
  ),
  ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *,
  ( model.placeLike | listPlace ) *
)
}

```

Example

```

<place> <country>Lithuania</country> <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
</place>
<settlement>Vilnius</settlement> </place> <place>
<settlement>Kaunas</settlement> </place> </place>

```

4.9.171 <placeName>

<placeName> contains an absolute or relative place name. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expansion](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
 figures: [formula](#)
 gaiji: [g](#)
 linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
      placeName
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
      att.canonical.attribute.key,
      att.canonical.attribute.ref,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
      att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
      att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,

```

```

    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

- Example <placeName> <settlement>Rochester</settlement> <region>New
York</region></placeName>
- Example <placeName> <geogName>Arrochar
Alps</geogName> <region>Argylshire</region></placeName>
- Example <placeName> <measure>10 miles</measure> <offset>Northeast
of</offset> <settlement>Attica</settlement></placeName>

4.9.172 <population>

<population> contains information about the population of a place.

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [population](#) [model.placeTraitLike](#)

May core: [bibl](#) [desc](#) [head](#) [label](#) [note](#) [p](#)

contain msdescription: [msDesc](#)
namesdates: [population](#)

```

                                element
                                population
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,

```

Declaration
n

```

att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
(
  model.headLike*,
  (
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
  )?,
  population*
)
}

```

Example

```

<population when="2001-04" resp="UKCensus"> <population type="white">
<desc>54153898</desc> </population> <population type="asian">
<desc>11811423</desc> </population> <population type="black">
<desc>1148738</desc> </population> <population type="mixed">
<desc>677117</desc> </population> <population type="chinese">
<desc>247403</desc> </population> <population type="other">
<desc>230615</desc> </population></population>

```

4.9.173 <principal>

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [titleStmt](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
principal

Declaration

```

{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

Example <principal>Gary Taylor</principal>

4.9.174 <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.headerPart](#)

May header: [creation](#) [langUsage](#) [textClass](#)

contain transcr: [handNotes](#)

	element profileDesc
Declaratio n	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (creation?, model.profileDescPart*) }</pre>

Example	<pre> <profileDesc> <langUsage> <language ident="fr">French</language> </langUsage> <textDesc n="novel"> <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel> <constitution type="single"/> <derivation type="original"/> <domain type="art"/> <factuality type="fiction"/> <interaction type="none"/> <preparedness type="prepared"/> <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/> <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/> </textDesc> <settingDesc> <setting> <name>Paris, France</name> <time>Late 19th century</time> </setting> </settingDesc></profileDesc></pre>
---------	---

4.9.175 <projectDesc>

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD51> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default)

Used by [model.encodingPart](#)

May contain core: [p](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        projectDesc
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.declarable.attribute.default,
        model.pLike+
    }

```

Example `<projectDesc> <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p></projectDesc>`

4.9.176 <provenance>

<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition. [2.5 History](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [history](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        provenance
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
        att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
    }

```

```
    <macro.specialPara
  }
```

Example <provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in
1788.</provenance><provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance>

4.9.177 <ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.pointing](#) (@type, @evaluate) [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

target

specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying one or more URI

References

Status

Required

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace.

Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

Attributes cRef
(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status

Required

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "`(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+`" } separated by whitespace

Values

the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [??](#)) should be a valid URI reference to the intended target

Note

The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the `decls` attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given [ptr](#) element.

Used by [model.ptrLike](#)

May contain Empty element

```
element
ptr
```

Declaration {
 [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),
 [att.global.attribute.n](#),
 [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#),

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.pointing.attribute.type,
att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
att.declaring.attribute.decls,
(
  attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }
|attribute
  cRef
  {
    list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } + }
  }
),
empty
}

```

Example `<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/><ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>`

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

4.9.178 <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [docImprint](#) [model.imprintPart](#) [model.publicationStmtPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

element
pubPlace
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example `<publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date></publicat`

ionStmt>

4.9.179 <publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [fileDesc](#)

May core: [date](#) [p](#) [pubPlace](#) [publisher](#)

contain header: [authority](#) [availability](#) [distributor](#) [idno](#)

```

element
publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}

```

Example <publicationStmt> <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher> <pubPlace>Bruxelles
& Leipzig</pubPlace> <date when="1846"/></publicationStmt>

Example <publicationStmt> <publisher>Chadwyck
Healey</publisher> <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace> <availability>
<p>Available under licence
only</p> </availability> <date when="1992">1992</date></publicationStmt>

Note Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance
that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date
be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or
authority concerned

4.9.180 <publisher>

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [docImprint](#) [model.imprintPart](#) [model.publicationStmtPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)

[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
[namesdates](#): [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	element
	publisher
Declaration	<pre> { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

Example	<pre> <imprint> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher> <date>1987</date></imprint> </pre>
---------	---

Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
------	--

4.9.181 <q>

<q> (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ>

Module	<p>core</p> <p>In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.ascribed (@who)</p> <p>type</p> <p>may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Required when applicable</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p>
Attributes	<p>spoken</p> <p>representation of speech</p> <p>thought</p> <p>representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue</p> <p>written</p> <p>quotation from a written source</p> <p>soCalled</p> <p>authorial distance</p> <p>foreign</p> <p>(foreign words)</p> <p>distinct</p> <p>(linguistically distinct)</p> <p>term</p> <p>(technical term)</p>

emph
(rhetorically emphasized)
mentioned
referring to itself, not its normal referant

Used by [model.qLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#)
[hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#)
[reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

    element
    q
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.ascribed.attribute.who,
      attribute
      type
      {
        "spoken"
        | "thought"
        | "written"
        | "soCalled"
        | "foreign"
        | "distinct"
        | "term"
        | "emph"
        | "mentioned"
        | xsd:Name
      }?,
      macro.specialPara
    }

```

Declaration

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Note

May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text by quotation marks for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, [q](#) may be thought of as syntactic sugar for [hi](#) with a value of rend that indicates the use of quotation marks.

4.9.182 <quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5->

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP>

Module	core
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
Used by	model.quoteLike core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied
May contain	
Declaration	<pre> element quote { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.msExcerpt.attribute.defective, macro.specialPara }</pre>
Example	Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote><ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
Note	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

4.9.183 <recordHist>

<recordHist> (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself. [2.6.1 Administrative information](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	adminInfo
May contain	core: p msdescription: source
Declaration	<pre> element recordHist {</pre>

```

    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    ( model.pLike+ | source )
}

```

Example <recordHist> <source>
 <p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with additional
 research by P.M.W.Robinson</p> </source> <change when="1999-06-23">
 <name>LDB</name> (editor) checked examples against DTD version
 3.6 </change></recordHist>

4.9.184 <ref>

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.pointing](#) (@type,
 @evaluate) [att.declaring](#) (@decls)

target

specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

References

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace.

Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

Attributes

cRef

(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the reference by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}\\p{N}\\p{P}\\p{S})+" } separated by whitespace

Values

the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [??](#)) should be a valid URI reference to the intended target

Note

The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the decls attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given [ref](#) element.

Used by	<p>model.ptrLike</p> <p>core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element ref { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.pointing.attribute.type, att.pointing.attribute.evaluate, att.declaring.attribute.decls, (attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }? attribute cRef { list { token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" }+ } }?), macro.paraContent } </pre>
Example	<p><ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">See especially the second sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.></p>
Note	<p>The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.</p>

4.9.185 <refState>

<refState> (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54>

Module header

In addition to global attributes
ed

(edition) indicates which edition or version the milestone applies to.

Attributes Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

Note

If ed is not specified, then any milestone tag with an appropriate unit attribute will be selected.

unit

indicates what kind of state is changing at this milestone.

Status

Required

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

page

page breaks in the reference edition.

column

column breaks.

line

line breaks.

book

any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem

individual poems in a collection.

canto

cantos or other major sections of a poem.

stanza

stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act

acts within a play.

scene

scenes within a play or act.

section

sections of any kind.

absent

passages not present in the reference edition.

length

specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Values

Should be a positive integer; if no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

Note

When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side.

When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly.

delim

(delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

Status	Optional
Datatype	text
Values	If a single space is used it is interpreted as whitespace.
Used by	
May contain	Empty element

	<pre> element refState { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute ed { xsd:anyURI }?, attribute unit { "page" "column" "line" "book" "poem" "canto" "stanza" "act" "scene" "section" "absent" xsd:Name }, attribute length { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?, attribute delim { text }?, empty } </pre>
Declaration	

Example `<refState unit="book" delim=":"/><refState unit="line" length="4"/>`

4.9.186 **<reg>**

`<reg>` (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC>

Module	core
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.editLike (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear
May contain	figures: figure formula gaiji: g

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
 msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
 namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
 transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

      element
      reg
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.editLike.attribute.cert,
      att.editLike.attribute.resp,
      att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
      att.editLike.attribute.source,
      att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
      att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
      att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
      att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
      att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
      att.dimensions.attribute.min,
      att.dimensions.attribute.max,
      att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      macro.paraContent
    }
  
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, [reg](#) may be used alone:

```

<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is
<reg>required</reg></q>
  
```

It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the [choice](#) and [orig](#) elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

Example

```

<q>Please<choice>
<reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
<orig>cnk</orig> </choice> if an<choice>
<reg>answer</reg>
<orig>nsr</orig> </choice> is<choice>
<reg>required</reg>
<orig>reqd</orig> </choice></q>
  
```

4.9.187 <region>

<region> contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Attributes In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef)

([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.dataable](#)
([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
type
characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification
scheme or typology.
Status
Required
Datatype
xsd:Name
Legal values are:
parish
county
compass
geog
state
unknown
[Default]

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)
core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#)
[milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

                                element
                                region
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  attribute
                                type
{
  "parish" | "county" | "compass" | "geog" | "state" | "unknown"
},
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <placeName> <region type="state" n="IL">Illinois</region></placeName>

4.9.188 <relatedItem>

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.biblPart](#)

May core: [bibl](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#)

contain msdescription: [msDesc](#)

Declaration

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<element
  relatedItem
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )
  }

```

```

<biblStruct> <monogr>
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <imprint>
    <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
    <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
    <date>1953</date>
  </imprint>
  <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent> </monogr> <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–
    1700</title> </series> <relatedItem type="original">
  <biblStruct>

```

Example

```

<monogr>
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <title type="subordinate">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house
  in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
  <imprint>
    <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
    <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
    <date>1655</date>
  </imprint>
  <extent>78 p.</extent>
</monogr>
</biblStruct> </relatedItem></biblStruct>

```

4.9.189 <relation>

<relation> (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of participants. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

type

categorizes the relationship in some respect, e.g. as social, personal or other.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Suggested values include:

social

relationship concerned with social roles

personal

relationship concerned with personal roles, e.g. kinship, marriage, etc. [Default]

other

other kinds of relationship

name

supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.

Status

Attributes Required

Datatype

xsd:Name

Values

an open list of application-dependent keywords

passive

identifies the ‘passive’ participants in a non-mutual relationship.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

active

identifies the ‘active’ participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values

a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

	<p>mutual</p> <p>supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Mandatory when applicable</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>1–∞ occurrences of <code>xsd:anyURI</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups</p>
Used by	listOrg listPerson listPlace relationGrp
May contain	core: desc
Declaration	<pre> element relation { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, attribute type { "social" "personal" "other" xsd:Name }?, attribute name { xsd:Name }, attribute passive { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?, (attribute active { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }? attribute mutual { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?), desc? } </pre>
Example	<pre><relation type="social" name="supervisor" active="#p1" passive="#p2 #p3 #p4"/></pre> <p>This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4.</p>
Example	<pre><relation type="personal" name="friends" mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"/></pre> <p>This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends.</p>
Note	<p>Only one of the attributes active and mutual may be supplied; the attribute passive may be supplied only if the attribute active is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages.</p>

4.9.190 <relationGrp>

<relationGrp> (relation group) provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)

May core: [p](#)

contain namesdates: [relation](#)

```

element
relationGrp
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  ( model.pLike+ | relation+ )
}

```

Example

```

<listPerson> <person xml:id="p1"><!-- data about person p1 --> </person><!--
more person elements here --
></listPerson><relationGrp type="personal"> <relation name="parent" active="
#p1 #p2" passive="#p3 #p4"/> <relation name="spouse" mutual="#p1
#p2"/></relationGrp><relationGrp type="social"> <relation name="employer" a
ctive="#p1" passive="#p3 #p5 #p6 #p7"/></relationGrp>

```

The persons with identifiers p1 and p2 are the parents of p3 and p4; they are also married to each other; p1 is the employer of p3, p5, p6, and p7.

Example

```

<relationGrp> <p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in
Naples.</p></relationGrp>

```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of [relation](#) elements.

4.9.191 <repository>

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [2.2 The Manuscript Identifier](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [altIdentifier](#) [msIdentifier](#)

May gaiji: [g](#)

```

element
repository
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
}

```

Declaration

```

    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
    att.canonical.attribute.key,
    att.canonical.attribute.ref,
    macro.xtext
}

```

Example <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of
Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS.
Bodley 406</idno></msIdentifier>

4.9.192 <residence>

<residence> (residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence.

<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#)
(@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#)
Attributes (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#)
(@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

Used by [model.persStateLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
residence

```

{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,

```

Declaration

```

    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
    att.canonical.attribute.key,
    att.canonical.attribute.ref,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <residence>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</residence>

Example <residence notAfter="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele land</residence><residence notBefore="1903" notAfter="1996"> <placeName>
<settlement>Glasgow</settlement>
<region>Scotland</region> </placeName></residence>

4.9.193 <resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)

Used by [respStmt](#)

core: [abbr](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [date](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [term](#) [title](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [space](#) [subst](#)

element
resp

Declaration

```

{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

Example <respStmt> <resp key="com">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name></respStmt>

Note The attributes key or ref, inherited from the class [att.canonical](#) may be used to

indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalised form, by referring directly (using ref) or indirectly (using key) to a standardised list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

4.9.194 <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26>

Module core
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [editionStmt](#) [seriesStmt](#) [titleStmt](#) [model.respLike](#)
May contain core: [name](#) [resp](#)
namesdates: [orgName](#) [persName](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    respStmt
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+,
resp+ ) )
    }

```

Example <respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName></respStmt>

Example <respStmt> <resp>converted to SGML encoding</resp> <name>Alan Morrison</name></respStmt>

4.9.195 <restore>

<restore> indicates restoration of text to an earlier state by cancellation of an editorial or authorial marking or instruction. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCD>

Module transcr
Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status, @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)
Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)
May contain core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#)

[ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

element
restore
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
  att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.paraContent
}

```

Example

For I hate

this<restore hand="#dhl" type="marginalStetNote"> my</restore>
> body

Note

On this element, the type attribute indicates the action cancelled by the restoration. Its value should be the name of the tag contained within the [restore](#) element which is cancelled by the restoration. Most often, this will be [del](#), but might also be [hi](#), etc. In cases of simple nesting of a single cancelled action within the [restore](#) element this attribute will not be necessary.

4.9.196 <revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11>

Module header
Attributes Global attributes only
Used by [teiHeader](#)

May contain	core: list header: change
Declaration	<pre> element revisionDesc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (list change+) } </pre>
Example	<code><revisionDesc> <change when="1991-11-11"> EMB deleted chapter 10 </change></revisionDesc></code>
Note	Record changes with most recent changes at the top of the list.

4.9.197 <roleName>

<roleName> contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	model.persNamePart core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg
May contain	msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied

Declaration	<pre> element roleName { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.personal.attribute.full, att.personal.attribute.sort, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, </pre>
-------------	--

```
    macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example `<persName> <forename>William</forename> <surname>Poulteny</surname>
<roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName></persName>`

Note A [roleName](#) may be distinguished from an [addName](#) by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

4.9.198 `<rubric>`

`<rubric>` contains the text of any rubric or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device. [2.3.1 The `<msItem>` Element](#)

Module `msdescription`

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.msItemPart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain `msdescription`: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
`namesdates`: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
`transcr`: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    rubric
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.typed.attribute.type,
      att.typed.attribute.subtype,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example `<rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<expan>ur</expan>.</rubric><rubric>Incipit
liber de consciencia humana a beatissimo Bernardo
editus.</rubric><rubric> <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta
Cassiodori</rubric>`

4.9.199 `<seal>`

`<seal>` contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript.

[2.4.3.2 Seals](#)

Module	msdescription
	In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) contemporary
Attributes	specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to which it is affixed Status Optional Datatype xsd:boolean "unknown" "inapplicable"
Used by	sealDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: decoNote
Declaration	<pre> element seal { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, attribute contemporary { xsd:boolean "unknown" "inapplicable" }?, (model.pLike decoNote)+ } </pre>
Example	<pre> <seal n="2" type="pendant" subtype="cauda_duplex"> <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax. (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>. Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p></seal> </pre>

4.9.200 <sealDesc>

<sealDesc> (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct [seal](#) elements, possibly with additional [decoNotes](#). [2.4.3.2 Seals](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	model.physDescPart
May contain	core: p msdescription: condition decoNote seal

Declaration	<pre> element sealDesc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, } </pre>
-------------	---

```

    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    ( model.pLike+ | ( decoNote | seal | condition )+ )
}

```

4.9.201 <secFol>

<secFol> (second folio) The word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it. [2.1.7 Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

                                element
                                secFol
{
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <secFol>(con-)versio morum</secFol>

4.9.202 <seg>

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/VE.html#VESE> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL>

Module linking

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.segLike](#) (@type, @function, @part)

Attributes subtype

provides a sub-categorization of the segment marked.

Status

	<p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" }</p> <p>Values</p> <p>any string of characters.</p> <p>Note</p> <p>The subtype attribute may be used to provide any classification for the seg elements tagged in a text suitable for the type given.</p>
Used by	<p>model.segLike model.choicePart</p> <p>core: abbr add bibl cb choice corr date del desc expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl milestone name note orig pb ptr q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p>
May contain	<p>linking: anchor seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material msDesc origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element seg { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.segLike.attribute.type, att.segLike.attribute.function, att.segLike.attribute.part, attribute subtype { token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" } }?, macro.paraContent } </pre>
Example	<p><seg>When are you leaving?</seg><seg>Tomorrow.</seg></p>
Example	<p><s> <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the ballfield.</s></p>
Example	<p><seg type="preamble"> <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in Frankish country.</seg> <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg> <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ...</seg></seg></p>
Note	<p>The seg element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element — i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a ptr or other similar element.</p>

4.9.203 <seriesStmt>

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26>
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [fileDesc](#)

May core: [p respStmt title](#)

contain header: [idno](#)

```

                                element
                                seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( idno | respStmt ) * ) )
}

```

Declaration
n

Example

```

<seriesStmt> <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian
Literature</title> <respStmt>
<resp>ed. by</resp>
<name>Jan
Gonda</name> </respStmt> <idno type="vol">1.2</idno> <idno type="ISSN">
0 345 6789</idno></seriesStmt>

```

4.9.204 <settlement>

<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC>

Module namesdates

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref)) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype) [att.dataable](#) ([att.dataable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Used by [model.placeNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expansion](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

contain namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element settlement { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.naming.attribute.nymRef, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from, att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	---

Declaration

Example

```
<placeName> <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement> <region>Scotland</region></placeName>
```

4.9.205 <sex>

<sex> specifies the sex of a person.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.dateable](#) ([att.dateable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

value

Status

Optional

Attributes

Datatype

"0" | "1" | "2" | "9"

Note

Values for this attribute are taken from ISO 5218:1977 Representation of Human Sexes; 0 indicates unknown; 1 indicates male; 2 indicates female; and 9 indicates not applicable.

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain

msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    sex
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.editLike.attribute.source,
    att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
    att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
    att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
    att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
    att.dimensions.attribute.min,
    att.dimensions.attribute.max,
    att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.period,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
    att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
    attribute value { "0" | "1" | "2" | "9" }?,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }

```

Example <sex value="2">female</sex>

4.9.206 <sic>

<sic> (latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR>

Module core

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#) [model.choicePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#)
[hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#)
[term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#)
[space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    sic
  {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,

```

```

    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.paraContent
}

```

- Example for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:
- Example I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:
- Example I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <choice> <sic>we can</sic> <corr>can we</corr></choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
- Example for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <choice> <sic>a Table</sic> <corr>a' babld</corr></choice> of green fields.

4.9.207 <signatures>

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex. [2.1.7 Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
signatures

Declaration

```

{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different from others; every

third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>

4.9.208 <socecStatus>

<socecStatus> (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA>

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.datable](#) ([att.datable.w3c](#) (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) [att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))

scheme

identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

Status

Optional

Datatype

Attributes xsd:anyURI

Values

Must identify a [taxonomy](#) element

code

identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the source attribute.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

Must identify a [category](#) element

Used by [model.persTraitLike](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration {

element
socecStatus

[att.global.attribute.xmlid](#),

```

att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.when,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.from,
att.dataable.w3c.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.editLike.attribute.source,
att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
attribute code { xsd:anyURI }?,
macro.phraseSeq
}

```

Example <socecStatus scheme="#rg" code="#ab1"/>

Example <socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</socecStatus>

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

4.9.209 <source>

<source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description. [2.6.1.1 Record History](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [recordHist](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        source
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        macro.specialPara
    }
    
```

Example <source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref></source>

4.9.210 <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) supplies a description of the source text(s) from which an electronic text
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3>

Module header
Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default)
Used by [fileDesc](#)
May contain core: [bibl](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [p](#)
 msdescription: [msDesc](#)
 namesdates: [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        sourceDesc
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.declarable.attribute.default,
        (
            model.pLike+
            | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
        )
    }
    
```

Example <sourceDesc> <p>No source: created in machine-readable form.</p></sourceDesc>

4.9.211 <space>

<space> indicates the location of a significant space in the copy text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHSP>

Module transer
 In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.dimensions](#) (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)
Attributes dim
 (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.
 Status
 Recommended
 Legal values are:
 horizontal
 the space is horizontal.
 vertical

the space is vertical.

Note

For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical.

resp

(responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

a pointer to one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding

Used by model.global.edit

May contain Empty element

```

                                element
                                space
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  attribute dim { "horizontal" | "vertical" }?,
  attribute resp { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}

```

Example By god if wommen had writen storyes As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/>
han within her oratoryes

Note This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.

4.9.212 <sponsor>

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21>

Module header

Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	titleStmt core: abbr cb choice date expan foreign gap gloss index lb milestone name note pb ptr ref term title linking: anchor msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift space subst
May contain	
Declaration	<pre> element sponsor { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>
Example	<pre> <sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor><sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor><sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor> </pre>
Note	Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

4.9.213 <stamp>

<stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [2.1.3 Watermarks and Stamps](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
Used by	model.pPart.msdesc core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear figures: formula gaiji: g linking: anchor seg msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space
May contain	

subst supplied

Declaration

```

        element
        stamp
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.typed.attribute.type,
        att.typed.attribute.subtype,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.period,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.when,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.from,
        att.dateable.w3c.attribute.to,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }

```

Example

```

<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/> SI
NON LICET<lb/> NOBIS RO<lb/> manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian
stamp</stamp> <lb/></rubric>

```

4.9.214 <subst>

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

Module transcr

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.transcriptional](#) (@hand, @status,

Attributes @seq) ([att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)))

Used by [model.pPart.editorial](#)

May core: [add corr del orig reg sic unclear](#)

contain transcr: [damage restore supplied](#)

Declaration

```

        element
        subst
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.transcriptional.attribute.hand,
        att.transcriptional.attribute.status,
        att.transcriptional.attribute.seq,
        att.editLike.attribute.cert,
        att.editLike.attribute.resp,
        att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
        att.editLike.attribute.source,
        att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
        att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
        att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
        att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
        att.dimensions.attribute.min,
        att.dimensions.attribute.max,
        att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
        ( ( model.pPart.transcriptional ), model.pPart.transcriptional+ )
    }

```


}

- Example ... are all included. ~~hand="#RG">It~~
is<subst> <add>T</add> t</subst>he expressed
- Note Although a substitution may contain any mixture of additions and deletions;
there should be an addition for each deletion bearing the same sequence number.
This constraint cannot be modelled in the schema language currently deployed.

4.9.215 <summary>

<summary> contains a brief summary of the intellectual content of an item, provided by the
cataloguer. [2.3.1 The <msItem>Element](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [handDesc](#) [history](#) [msContents](#) [typeDesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
contain [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    summary
    {
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      macro.phraseSeq
    }
  
```

- Example <summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an
epilogue.</summary>

4.9.216 <supplied>

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason, typically
because the original cannot be read because of physical damage or loss to the original.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA>

Module transcr

Attributes In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert,
@resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))
reason

indicates why the text has had to be supplied.

Status

Required

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }separated
by whitespace

Values

any phrase describing the difficulty, e.g. overbinding, faded ink, lost folio,
omitted in original.

Legal values are:

omitted

illegible

damage

unknown

[Default]

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#)
[hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#)
[term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May
contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

```

      element
      supplied
    {
      attribute
      reason
      {
        list { ( "omitted" | "illegible" | "damage" | "unknown" )+ }
      },
      att.global.attribute.xmlid,
      att.global.attribute.n,
      att.global.attribute.xmllang,
      att.global.attribute.rend,
      att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
      att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
      att.editLike.attribute.cert,
      att.editLike.attribute.resp,
      att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
      att.editLike.attribute.source,
      att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
      att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
      att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
      att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
      att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
      att.dimensions.attribute.min,
      att.dimensions.attribute.max,
      att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
      macro.paraContent
    }
  
```

Declaratio
n

}

- Example I am dr Sr yr<supplied reason="illegible" source="amanuensis copy">very
humble Servt</supplied> Sydney Smith
- Note The [damage](#), [gap](#), [del](#), [unclear](#) and [supplied](#) elements may be closely allied in
use. See section ?? for discussion of which element is appropriate for which
circumstance.

4.9.217 <support>

<support> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for
the written part of a manuscript. [2.4.1 Object Description](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [supportDesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#)
[hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#)
[reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaratio
n

```

        element
        support
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        macro.specialPara
    }

```

- Example <objectDesc form="roll"> <supportDesc>
<support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
</support> </supportDesc></objectDesc>

4.9.218 <supportDesc>

<supportDesc> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the
written part of a manuscript. [2.4.1 Object Description](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes

Attributes material

a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the

	<p>support</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Required</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:Name</p> <p>Legal values are:</p> <p>perg</p> <p>parchment</p> <p>chart</p> <p>paper</p> <p>mixed</p> <p>mixture of paper and parchment, or other materials</p> <p>unknown</p> <p>[Default]</p>
Used by	objectDesc
May contain	<p>core: p</p> <p>header: extent</p> <p>msdescription: collation condition foliation support</p>
Declaration	<pre> element supportDesc { attribute material { "perg" "chart" "mixed" "unknown" }, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (model.pLike+ (support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition?)) } </pre>
Example	<pre> <supportDesc> <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons. </support></supportDesc> </pre>

4.9.219 <surface>

<surface> defines a written surface in terms of a rectangular coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, and rectangular zones of interest within it.

Module	<p>transcr</p> <p>In addition to global attributes and those inherited from att.coordinated (@ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) att.declaring (@decls)</p> <p>start</p> <p>points to an element which encodes the starting position of the text</p>
Attributes	<p>corresponding to the inscribed part of the surface.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>xsd:anyURI</p>
Used by	facsimile
May	core: desc gloss graphic

contain figures: [formula](#)
transcr: [zone](#)

element
surface

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.coordinated.attribute.ulx,
  att.coordinated.attribute.uly,
  att.coordinated.attribute.lrx,
  att.coordinated.attribute.lry,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  attribute start { xsd:anyURI }?,
  ( model.glossLike*, model.graphicLike*, zone* )
}
```

Declaration

Example <facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
<graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface></facsimile>

The [surface](#) element represents a rectangular area of any physical surface forming part of the source material. This may be a sheet of paper, one face of a monument, a billboard, a papyrus scroll, or indeed any 2-dimensional surface.

Note The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid lrx - ulx units wide and uly - lry units high. This grid is superimposed on the whole of any image directly contained by the [surface](#) element. The coordinate values used by every [zone](#) element contained by this surface are to be understood with reference to the same grid.

4.9.220 <surname>

<surname> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER>

Module namesdates

Global attributes and those inherited from [att.personal](#) (@full, @sort)
Attributes ([att.naming](#) (@nymRef) ([att.canonical](#) (@key, @ref))) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [model.persNamePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declaration element
surname

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
  att.canonical.attribute.key,
  att.canonical.attribute.ref,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example <surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>

4.9.221 <surrogates>

<surrogates> contains information about any non-digital representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [2.6 Additional information](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [additional](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
surrogates

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

Example

```
<surrogates> <p>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">diapositive</title>
<idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno>
```

```
<date>May 1984</date>
</bibl>
<bibl>
<title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
<idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno>
<date>1972</date>
</bibl> </p></surrogates>
```

4.9.222 <taxonomy>

<taxonomy> defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [classDecl](#)

May contain
core: [bibl](#) [desc](#) [gloss](#)
header: [category](#)
msdescription: [msDesc](#)

Declaration

```

element
taxonomy
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.glossLike* | category+ | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* ) )
}

```

Example

```

<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b"> <bibl>Brown
Corpus</bibl> <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
<catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
<catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
<catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
<catDesc>National</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
<catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
<catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
<catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.d">

```

```
<catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
<catDesc>Books</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
<catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
</category> </category></taxonomy>
```

4.9.223 <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF>

Module header

In addition to global attributes

type

specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status

Optional

Attributes

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

text

the header is attached to a single text. [Default]

corpus

the header is attached to a corpus.

Used by [TEI](#)

May contain header: [encodingDesc](#) [fileDesc](#) [profileDesc](#) [revisionDesc](#)

element
teiHeader

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.headerPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Example

```
<teiHeader> <fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
<author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
<respStmt>
<resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
<name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
```



```

<resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
<name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<address>
<addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
</address>
<idno type="OTA">119</idno>
<availability>
<p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
</availability>
<date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman    (The
Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc> </fileDesc> <encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
<p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of    old-spelling
concordances in 1968, this text was extensively    checked and revised for
use during the editing of the new Oxford    Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor,
1989).</p>
</projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
<correction>
<p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
</correction>
<normalization>
<p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except    that long s and
ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
</normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
<cRefPattern    matchPattern="(\S+)
([^\.]+)\.(.*)"    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']/l
b[@n='$3'])">
<p>A reference is created by assembling the following,    in the reverse
order as that listed here:
<list>
<item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
</item>
<item>a period</item>
<item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
</item>
<item>a space</item>
<item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
</item>

```

```

</list>
</p>
</cRefPattern>
</refsDecl> </encodingDesc> <revisionDesc>
<list>
<item>
<date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
<item>
<date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
</list> </revisionDesc></teiHeader>

```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

4.9.224 <term>

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

sortKey

supplies the sort key for this term in an index.

Status

Optional

Datatype

token { pattern = "(\p{L}\p{N}\p{P}\p{S})+" }

Values

any string of Unicode characters.

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-

Kohen<index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term></index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.

Note

Attributes The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index; if this attribute is not supplied, the textual content of the element is used for this purpose.

target

identifies the associated [gloss](#) element by an absolute or relative URI

reference

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a [gloss](#) element

cRef

identifies the associated [gloss](#) element using a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status

Optional

	<p>Datatype xsd:anyURI</p> <p>Values the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section ??) should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a gloss element</p> <p>Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the decls attribute.</p>
Used by	<p>index keywords model.emphLike</p> <p>core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element term { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.declaring.attribute.decls, att.typed.attribute.type, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute sortKey { token { pattern = "(\\p{L} \\p{N} \\p{P} \\p{S})+" } }?, (attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }?), macro.phraseSeq } } </pre>
Example	<p>A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.</p>
Example	<p>We may define <term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></p>
Note	<p>This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent index element.</p> <p>In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The term element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term</p>

can be; the looser definition simply allows the [term](#) element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

4.9.225 <text>

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF>

Module textstructure

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declaring](#) (@decls) [att.typed](#) (@type, @subtype)

Used by [TEI group](#)

core: [cb](#) [gap](#) [index](#) [lb](#) [milestone](#) [note](#) [pb](#)

linking: [anchor](#)

May contain textstructure: [back](#) [body](#) [front](#) [group](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [fw](#) [space](#)

```

                                element
                                text
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<text> <front>
<docTitle>
<titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
</docTitle> </front> <body>
<l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
<l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body></text>

```

The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

Example

```

<text> <front/> <group>
<text>
<front/>
<body/>
<back/>
</text>
<text/> </group></text>

```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

4.9.226 <textClass>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43>

Module header

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.declarable](#) (@default)

Used by [model.profileDescPart](#)

May contain header: [catRef](#) [classCode](#) [keywords](#)

Declaration

```

    element
    textClass
    {
        att.global.attribute.xmlid,
        att.global.attribute.n,
        att.global.attribute.xmllang,
        att.global.attribute.rend,
        att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
        att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
        att.declarable.attribute.default,
        ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
    }

```

Example

```

<taxonomy> <category xml:id="acprose">
<catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc> </category><!-- other categories here --
></taxonomy><!-- ... --
><textClass> <catRef target="#acprose"/> <classCode scheme="http://www.udc
c.org">001.9</classCode> <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
<list>
<item>End of the world</item>
<item>History - philosophy</item>
</list> </keywords></textClass>

```

4.9.227 <textLang>

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems used by a manuscript (as opposed to its description, which is described in the [langUsage](#) element).
[2.3.6 Languages and Writing Systems](#)

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes
mainLang

(main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the manuscript.

Attributes
Status
Required
Datatype
xsd:language

	<p>Values</p> <p>a recognised language ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a language element in the header</p> <p>otherLangs</p> <p>(other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the manuscript.</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Optional</p> <p>Datatype</p> <p>0–∞ occurrences of <code>xsd:language</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Values</p> <p>a list of codes, each of which is a recognised language ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a language element in the header</p>
Used by	<p>msContents model.msItemPart</p> <p>core: abbr add cb choice corr date del expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note orig pb ptr ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: formula</p> <p>gaiji: g</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p>
May contain	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dimensions height heraldry locus material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName nameLink offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift restore space subst supplied</p>
Declaration	<pre> element textLang { attribute mainLang { xsd:language }, attribute otherLangs { list { xsd:language* } }?, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Example	<p><textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la">Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang></p>

4.9.228 <title>

<title> contains the full title of a work of any kind. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26>

Module core

Attributes In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.canonical](#) (@key,

@ref)

level

indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status

Required when applicable

Legal values are:

a

(analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

m

(monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

j

(journal) journal title

s

(series) series title

u

(unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note

If the title appears directly enclosed within an <analytic> element, the level, if given, must be 'a'; if it appears directly enclosed within a <monogr> element, level must be 'm', 'j', or 'u'; when [title](#) is directly enclosed by <series>, level must be 's'. If it appears within a [msItem](#), this attribute should not be supplied.

type

classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

main

main title

sub

(subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt

(alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short

abbreviated form of title

desc

(descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note

This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single [title](#) element.

Used by [seriesStmt](#) [titleStmt](#) [model.emphLike](#) [model.msItemPart](#)

May contain core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element title { attribute level { "a" "m" "j" "s" "u" }?, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, macro.paraContent } </pre>
Declaration	
Example	<code><title ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/La_Vie_mode_d%27emploi">>La vie mode d'emploi. Romans.</title></code>
Example	<code><title>Synthese: an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title></code>
Example	<code><title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18–21 July 1989</title></code>
Example	<code><title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title></code>
Note	The attributes <code>key</code> and <code>ref</code> , inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

4.9.229 <titlePage>

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module	textstructure
	In addition to global attributes
	type
	classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.
Attributes	Status
	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Values

	Any string, e.g. full, half, Series, etc.
	Note
	This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the 'main' title page of a work.
Used by	model.frontPart
	core: cb gap graphic index lb milestone note pb
May	figures: figure
contain	linking: anchor
	textstructure: docAuthor docEdition docImprint docTitle titlePart
	transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw space
Declaration	<pre> element titlePage { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, (model.global*, (model.titlepagePart), (model.titlepagePart model.global) *) }</pre>
Example	<pre> <titlePage> <docTitle> <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart> <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart> </docTitle> <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition> <byline>By T.D.</byline> <figure> <head>TP</head> <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p> <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc> </figure> <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name> <date>1612.</date> </docImprint></titlePage></pre>

4.9.230 <titlePart>

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
<http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL>

Module	textstructure
	In addition to global attributes
	type
	specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.
	Status
Attributes	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:Name
	Suggested values include:
	main

main title of the work [Default]
sub
(subordinate) subtitle of the work
alt
(alternate) alternative title of the work
short
abbreviated form of title
desc
(descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Used by [docTitle](#) [model.titlepagePart](#) [model.pLike.front](#)
core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)
figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)
gaiji: [g](#)
linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)
May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)
namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)
transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
titlePart

```

{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name
}?,
  macro.paraContent
}

```

Declaration

Example

```

<docTitle> <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES  AND MISFORTUNES
Of the FAMOUS  Moll Flanders,
&amp;c. </titlePart> <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
And during a Life of continu'd Variety for  Threescore Years, besides her
Childhood, was  Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi>
(wherof  once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>  Eight Year a
Transported
<hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,  at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd
<hi>Honest</hi>, and died a <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

4.9.231 <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5->

<doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2>

Module	header
Attributes	Global attributes only
Used by	fileDesc
May contain	core: author editor respStmt title header: funder principal sponsor
Declaration	<pre> element titleStmt { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, (title+, (author editor sponsor funder principal respStmt) *) } </pre>
Example	<pre> <titleStmt> <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine- readable transcription</title> <respStmt> <resp>compiled by</resp> <name>P.J. Lucas</name> </respStmt></titleStmt> </pre>

4.9.232 <trait>

<trait> contains a description of some culturally-determined and in principle unchanging characteristic attributed to a person or place .

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)) att.naming (@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Used by	trait model.persTraitLike model.placeTraitLike
May contain	core: bibl desc head label note p msdescription: msDesc namesdates: trait

Declaration	<pre> element trait { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.datable.w3c.attribute.period, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore, att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter, att.datable.w3c.attribute.from, att.datable.w3c.attribute.to, att.editLike.attribute.cert, att.editLike.attribute.resp, att.editLike.attribute.evidence, att.editLike.attribute.source, </pre>
-------------	--

```

att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
att.dimensions.attribute.min,
att.dimensions.attribute.max,
att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
att.naming.attribute.nymRef,
att.canonical.attribute.key,
att.canonical.attribute.ref,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
(
  trait+
) * )
| ( ( model.labelLike | model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) * )
)
}

```

Example `<trait cert="high" type="social" from="1987-01-01" to="1997-12-31"> <label>citizenship</label> <desc>Between 1987 and 1997 held status of naturalized UK citizen</desc></trait>`

Example `<trait type="physical"> <label>Eye colour</label> <desc>Blue</desc></trait>`

4.9.233 <typeDesc>

<typeDesc> contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [2.4.2.1 Writing](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.physDescPart](#)

May contain
core: [p](#)
header: [typeNote](#)
msdescription: [summary](#)

Declaration

```

element
typeDesc
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, typeNote+ ) )
}

```

Example `<typeDesc> <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the 15th century</p></typeDesc>`

Example `<typeDesc> <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua) typefaces</summary> <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</typeNote> <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote></typeDesc>`

4.9.234 <typeNote>

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [2.4.2 Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](#)

Module header

Attributes Global attributes and those inherited from [att.handFeatures](#) (@scribe, @script, @medium, @scope)

Used by [typeDesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#) [l](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [lg](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [p](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#) [msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#) [geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#) [subst](#) [supplied](#)

element
typeNote

Declaration

```
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.handFeatures.attribute.scribe,
  att.handFeatures.attribute.script,
  att.handFeatures.attribute.medium,
  att.handFeatures.attribute.scope,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

Example <typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate influence.</typeNote>

4.9.235 <unclear>

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA> <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD>

Module core

In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.editLike](#) (@cert, @resp, @evidence, @source) ([att.dimensions](#) (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope))

Attributes

reason

indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status

Optional

Datatype

1–∞ occurrences of token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }separated by
whitespace

Values

one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. faded, background noise, passing
truck, illegible, eccentric ductus.

<div> <head>Rx</head> <p>500 mg

<unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear> </p></div>

hand

Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.)

assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:anyURI

Values

must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section
[??](#)).

agent

Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of
the damage, if it can be identified.

Status

Optional

Datatype

xsd:Name

Sample values include:

rubbing

damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew

damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke

damage results from smoke

Used by [model.pPart.transcriptional](#) [model.choicePart](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [bibl](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [desc](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#)
[index](#) [label](#) [lb](#) [list](#) [listBibl](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [q](#) [quote](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#)
[title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [figure](#) [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May
contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[msDesc](#) [origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [listOrg](#) [listPerson](#) [listPlace](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#)
[persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#) [roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

Declarati

element
unclear

```

on
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.editLike.attribute.source,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast,
  att.dimensions.attribute.atMost,
  att.dimensions.attribute.min,
  att.dimensions.attribute.max,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  attribute
      reason
      {
        list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
      }?,
  attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent
}

```

The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter [??](#). The [damage](#), [gap](#), [del](#), [unclear](#) and [supplied](#) elements may be closely allied in use. See section [??](#) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

4.9.236 <unicodeName>

<unicodeName> (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property.

Module	gaiji
	In addition to global attributes
	version
	specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.
Attributes	Status
	Optional
	Datatype
	xsd:double xsd:decimal
	Values
	a valid version number.
Used by	charProp
May contain	Character data only

	element
	unicodeName
Declaration {	
	att.global.attribute.xmlid ,
	att.global.attribute.n ,

```

    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    attribute version { xsd:double | xsd:decimal }?,
    text
}

```

Example <unicodeName>character-decomposition-
mapping</unicodeName><unicodeName>general-category</unicodeName>

Note A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

4.9.237 <value>

<value> (value) contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis.

Module gaiji

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [charProp](#)

May contain gaiji: [g](#)

```

                                element
                                value
                                {
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
    macro.xtext
}

```

Example <value>unknown</value>

4.9.238 <watermark>

<watermark> contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device. [2.1.3 Watermarks and Stamps](#)

Module msdescription

Attributes Global attributes only

Used by [model.pPart.msdesc](#)

core: [abbr](#) [add](#) [cb](#) [choice](#) [corr](#) [date](#) [del](#) [expan](#) [foreign](#) [gap](#) [gloss](#) [graphic](#) [hi](#) [index](#)
[lb](#) [milestone](#) [name](#) [note](#) [orig](#) [pb](#) [ptr](#) [ref](#) [reg](#) [sic](#) [term](#) [title](#) [unclear](#)

figures: [formula](#)

gaiji: [g](#)

linking: [anchor](#) [seg](#)

May contain msdescription: [catchwords](#) [depth](#) [dimensions](#) [height](#) [heraldry](#) [locus](#) [material](#)
[origDate](#) [origPlace](#) [secFol](#) [signatures](#) [stamp](#) [watermark](#) [width](#)

namesdates: [addName](#) [affiliation](#) [bloc](#) [country](#) [district](#) [forename](#) [genName](#) [geo](#)
[geogFeat](#) [geogName](#) [nameLink](#) [offset](#) [orgName](#) [persName](#) [placeName](#) [region](#)
[roleName](#) [settlement](#) [surname](#)

transcr: [addSpan](#) [am](#) [damage](#) [damageSpan](#) [delSpan](#) [ex](#) [fw](#) [handShift](#) [restore](#) [space](#)
[subst](#) [supplied](#)

	<pre> element watermark { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
Declaration	
Example	<pre> <support> <p> <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark> watermark</p></support> </pre>

4.9.239 <width>

<width> contains a measurement measured along the axis perpendicular to the spine. [2.1.4 Dimensions](#)

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @scope)
Used by	dimensions model.measureLike
May contain	gaiji: g

	<pre> element width { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.dimensions.attribute.unit, att.dimensions.attribute.quantity, att.dimensions.attribute.extent, att.dimensions.attribute.atLeast, att.dimensions.attribute.atMost, att.dimensions.attribute.min, att.dimensions.attribute.max, att.dimensions.attribute.scope, macro.xtext } </pre>
Declaration	
n	

Example <width unit="in">4</width>

4.9.240 <zone>

<zone> defines a rectangular area contained within a [surface](#) element.

Module	transcr
Attributes	Global attributes and those inherited from att.coordinated (@ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry)
Used by	surface
May contain	core: desc gloss graphic figures: formula

	<pre> element zone { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.rend, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.coordinated.attribute.ulx, att.coordinated.attribute.uly, att.coordinated.attribute.lrx, att.coordinated.attribute.lry, (<u>model.glossLike*</u>, <u>model.graphicLike*</u>) } </pre>
Declaration	

Example	<pre> <facsimile> <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400" lry="280"> <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321"> <graphic url="graphic.png" /> </zone> </surface></facsimile> </pre>
---------	--

Note	<p>The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface. Any graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.</p>
------	---

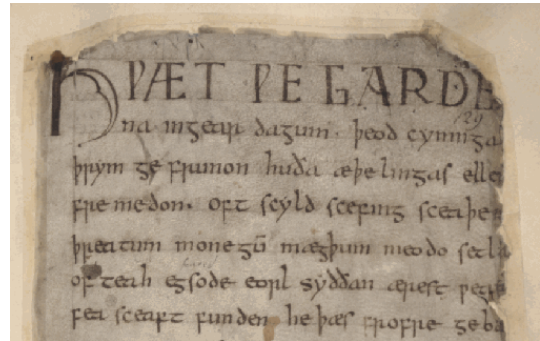
5 Appendix: Booklet with handouts

What is XML markup for?

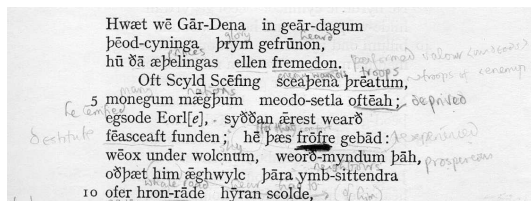
TEI @ Oxford

September 2008

What's in a text ?



Is this the same text?



The ontology of text

Where is the text?

- ▶ in the shape of letters and their layout?
- ▶ in the original from which this copy derives?
- ▶ in the stories we read into it? or in its author's intentions?

A "text" is an abstraction, created by or for a community of readers. Markup encodes and makes concrete such abstractions.

Encoding of texts

- ▶ Texts are more than sequences of encoded glyphs
 - ▶ They have **structure** and **content**
 - ▶ They also have multiple **readings**
- ▶ Encoding, or markup, is a way of making these things explicit

Only that which is explicit can be reliably processed

What's the point of markup?

- ▶ To make explicit (to a machine) what is implicit (to a person)
- ▶ To add value by supplying multiple annotations
- ▶ To facilitate re-use of the same material
 - ▶ in different formats
 - ▶ in different contexts
 - ▶ by different users

It's (usually) more useful to markup what we think things *are* than what they *look like*

Markup as a scholarly activity

- ▶ The application of markup to a document can be an intellectual activity
- ▶ In deciding what markup to apply, and how this represents the original, one is undertaking the task of an editor
- ▶ There is (almost) no such thing as neutral markup -- all of it involves interpretation
- ▶ Markup can assist in answering research questions, and the deciding what markup is needed to enable such questions to be answered can be a research activity in itself
- ▶ Good textual encoding is never as easy or quick as people would believe
- ▶ Detailed document analysis is needed before encoding for the resulting markup to be useful

What does markup capture?

Compare

```
<lb/>
<hi rend="dropcap">H</hi>
<g ref="#WYNN"/>ET WE GARDE
<lb/>na in gear-dagum beod-cyninga
<lb/>brym gefrunon, hu ða æbelingas
<lb/>ellen fremedon, oft scyld scefing sceape
<supplied>na</supplied>
<lb/>breatum, moneg<ex>um</ex> magbum meodo-setl
<supplied>a</supplied>
<lb/>of<damage>
<desc>blotted</desc>
</damage>teah ...

and

<lg>
<lh>Hwæt! we Gar-dena in gear-dagum</l>
<lb>beod-cyninga brym gefrunon,</l>
<lb>hu ða æbelingas ellen fremedon,</l>
</lg>
<lg>
<lb>Oft Scyld Scefing sceapena breatum,</l>
<lb>monegum magbum meodo-setla ofteah;</l>
<lb>legode Eorle, syððan arrest wearþ</l>
<lb>feascraft funden...</l>
</lg>
```

Some alphabet soup

SGML	Standard Generalized Markup Language
HTML	Hypertext Markup Language
W3C	World Wide Web Consortium
XML	eXtensible Markup Language
DTD	Document Type Definition (or Declaration)
CSS	Cascading Style Sheet
Xpath	XML Path Language
XSLT	eXtensible Stylesheet Language - Transformations
XQuery	XML Querying
RELAXNG	Regular Expression Language for XML (New Generation)

Oh, and then there's also **TEI**, the *Text Encoding Initiative*

XML: what it is and why you should care

- ▶ XML is **structured data** represented as strings of text
- ▶ XML looks like HTML, except that:-
 - ▶ XML is **extensible**
 - ▶ XML must be **well-formed**
 - ▶ XML can be **validated**
- ▶ XML is application-, platform-, and vendor- independent
- ▶ XML empowers the **content provider** and facilitates data integration

XML terminology

An XML document may contain:-

- ▶ elements, possibly bearing attributes
- ▶ processing instructions
- ▶ comments
- ▶ entity references
- ▶ marked sections (CDATA, IGNORE, INCLUDE)

An XML document must be **well-formed** and may be **valid**

The rules of the XML Game

- ▶ An XML document represents a (kind of) **tree**
- ▶ It has a single **root** and many nodes
- ▶ Each node can be
 - ▶ a subtree
 - ▶ a single **element** (possibly bearing some **attributes**)
 - ▶ a string of **character data**
- ▶ Each element has a name or **generic identifier**
- ▶ Attribute names are predefined for a given element; values can also be constrained

Representing an XML tree

- ▶ An XML document is encoded as a linear string of characters
- ▶ It begins with a special **processing instruction**
- ▶ Element occurrences are marked by **start-** and **end-tags**
- ▶ The characters < and & are Magic and must always be "escaped" if you want to use them as themselves
- ▶ **Comments** are delimited by <!-- and -->
- ▶ **CDATA sections** are delimited by <![CDATA[and]]>
- ▶ Attribute name/value pairs are supplied on the start-tag and may be given in any order
- ▶ Entity references are delimited by & and ;

A complete XML document

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<greetings xmlns="http://www.example.com/ns">
  <hello type="fulsome">hello world!</hello>
</greetings>
```

- ▶ The XML declaration
- ▶ Namespace declaration
- ▶ The root element of the document itself
- ▶ Other elements and content
- ▶ Attribute and value

The XML declaration

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="iso-8859-1"?>
```

An XML document must begin with an **XML declaration** which does two things:

- ▶ specifies that this is an XML document, and which version of the XML standard it follows
- ▶ may specify a different character encoding for the document — if the default, and recommended, encoding UTF-8 is not being used

Namespace declarations

An XML document may include elements declared in different name spaces.

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"
  xmlns:math="http://www.mathml.org">
```

- ▶ a namespace declaration associates a namespace prefix with an external URI-like identifier
- ▶ the default namespace *may* be declared using a xmlns
- ▶ other name spaces must all use a specially declared prefix
- ▶ All TEI documents are declared within the TEI namespace
- ▶ The xml namespace is available in all XML documents; TEI uses it for global attributes @xml:id and @xml:lang

The Doctype Declaration

You may sometimes find an optional "Document Type" declaration:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<!DOCTYPE greeting SYSTEM "greeting.dtd" []">
```

- ▶ The DTD is one way of associating the document with its schema (but is not used by W3C or RELAXNG for this purpose)
- ▶ The DTD subset is used to provide declarations additional to those in the schema, for example for external files
- ▶ The DTD subset may be **internal**, **external**, or both

DTDs are now considered old-fashioned — RELAXNG or W3C schemas are preferred.

XML syntax: the small print

What does it mean to be **well-formed**?

1. there is a single root node containing the whole of an XML document
2. each subtree is properly nested within the root node
3. names are always case sensitive
4. start-tags and end-tags are always mandatory (except that a combined start-and-end tag may be used for empty nodes)
5. attribute values are always quoted

Note: You can be **valid** in addition to being well-formed. This means you obey the rules of a specified schema, such as the TEI.

Test your XML knowledge

- ▶ Which are correct?
 - ▶ `<seg>some text</seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg><foo>some</foo> <bar>text</bar></seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg><foo>some <bar></foo> text</bar></seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type="text">some text</seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type='text'>some text</seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type=text>some text</seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type = "text">some text</seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type="text">some text<seg/>`
 - ▶ `<seg type="text">some text<gap/></seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type="text">some text< /seg>`
 - ▶ `<seg type="text">some text</Seg>`

Live long and prosper! Lessons from the TEI

TEI @ Oxford

September 2008

1986 was a long time ago...

- ▶ The first computer virus – Brain – appears, in the USA
- ▶ Construction of the channel tunnel begins
- ▶ The Soviet Union launches space station Mir
- ▶ Disaster at Chernobyl
- ▶ Olaf Palme assassinated
- ▶ Records of the year: *Raising Hell* (Run DMC)... *Graceland* (Paul Simon)... *Группа крови* (Виктор Цой)

...but we used computers then

- ▶ Corpus linguistics
- ▶ Databases on CD ROM
- ▶ Largescale lexical resources already existed (eg TLF, TLG, LASLA...)
- ▶ Digital lexicography (e.g. OED)
- ▶ Document management systems (e.g. TeX, Scribe, tRoff..)
 - ▶ some proprietary (and expensive), some research
- ▶ Text archives
- ▶ Hypertext theory

But there was no world wide web and not many desktop pcs...

Birth of the Text Encoding Initiative

- ▶ Spring 1987: European workshops on standardisation of historical data (J.P. Genet, M Thaller)
- ▶ Autumn 1987: NEH funds an exploratory international workshop on the feasibility of defining "text encoding guidelines"



Today's question:

- ▶ So the TEI is *very old*!
- ▶ It comes from a time before the Web, before the DVD, the mobile phone, cable tv, or Microsoft Excel
- ▶ Not much in computing survives 5 years, never mind 20
- ▶ What relevance can it possibly have today?
- ▶ Why is it still here, and how has it survived?

Is the TEI still relevant?

- ▶ With XML everyone can create their own markup system and still share data!
- ▶ In the Semantic Web, XML systems will all understand each other's data!

If we have

- ▶ historical data marked up with a Historical Markup Language
- ▶ linguistic data marked up with a Linguistic Markup Language
- ▶ metadata marked up with a Metadata Markup Language

how will we integrate resources or ask interesting questions?

Haven't we been here before?

Relevance 1

The TEI provides

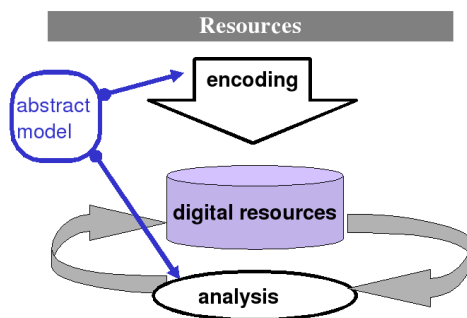
- ▶ a language-independent framework for defining markup languages
- ▶ a very simple consensus-based way of organizing and structuring textual (and other) resources...
- ▶ ... which can be enriched and personalized in highly idiosyncratic or specialised ways
- ▶ a very rich library of existing specialised components
- ▶ an integrated suite of standard stylesheets for delivering schemas and documentation in various languages and formats
- ▶ a large and active open source style user community

Relevance 2

Why would you want those things?

- ▶ because we need to interchange resources
 - ▶ between people
 - ▶ (increasingly) between machines
- ▶ because we need to integrate resources
 - ▶ of different media types
 - ▶ from different technical contexts
- ▶ because we need to preserve resources
 - ▶ cryogenics is not the answer!
 - ▶ we need to preserve metadata as well as data

The virtuous circle of encoding



The scope of intelligent markup

Even within the original scope of the TEI we have

- ▶ basic structural and functional components
- ▶ diplomatic transcription, images, annotation
- ▶ links, correspondence, alignment
- ▶ data-like objects such as dates, times, places, persons, events (named entity recognition)
- ▶ meta-textual annotations (correction, deletion, etc)
- ▶ linguistic analysis at all levels
- ▶ contextual metadata of all kinds
- ▶ ... and so on and so forth

Is it possible to delimit encyclopaedically all possible kinds of markup?

Reasons for attempting to define a common framework

- ▶ re-usability and repurposing of resources
- ▶ modular software development
- ▶ lower training costs
- ▶ 'frequently answered questions' — common technical solutions for different application areas

The TEI was designed to support multiple views of the same resource

Old Skool TEI

- ▶ A traditional (if large) research project with soft funding, driven by academic curiosity
- ▶ a codification of best practice, with no formal maintenance method
- ▶ uncertain licencing and development practices
- ▶ perceived as unmanageably complex except by the priesthood — or simultaneously as too simple for real scholarly work
- ▶ lack of specific tools to *do* something with a TEI text
- ▶ failure to market the advantages of rich markup

TEI New

- ▶ Proper open source licence, with visible development on Sourceforge
- ▶ Architecture rethought to facilitate expansion and integration with other systems
- ▶ Self documenting, each release fully validated, delivered using standard mechanisms
- ▶ Publicly available processing tools managed together with the Guidelines
- ▶ Active developer community, wiki, etc. Test files, exemplars, regular updates...
- ▶ New governance structure, new tools, new modules...

Three important things about TEI P5

1. Being a good digital citizen:
 - ▶ Support for multiple schema languages and namespaces
 - ▶ Reliance on XML, and hence on Unicode
 - ▶ Validation of attributes and datatyping
 - ▶ Use of W3C pointers and paths
2. Making it flexible:
 - ▶ ODD: a single specification language for developers, users, and teachers, integrating schema and documentation;
 - ▶ Verifiable conformance
3. Old annoyances removed and some new topics added

One Specification Language

- ▶ A set of TEI documents is described by an ODD, which is itself a TEI document that combines:
 - ▶ references to existing declarations
 - ▶ formal declarations for elements and attributes
 - ▶ documentation and usage notes
- ▶ Underlying this:
 - ▶ a conceptual model which abstracts from specific elements to generic classes
 - ▶ a modular architecture for combining sets of definitions
- ▶ specifications are chainable; modifications are written in ODD with ODD as input and output
- ▶ Roma is one interface to this: there will be others

For example

An ODD file is a valid TEI document, containing descriptive prose, and a `<schemaSpec>` element to define the schema it documents

```
<div>
<head>Our Project Manual</head>
<p>In this project we use the basic TEI structures
with a few minor modifications to exclude
elements we do not need</p>
<schemaSpec ident="TEI-minimal" start="TEI">
<moduleRef key="tei"/>
<moduleRef key="header"/>
<moduleRef key="core"/>
<moduleRef key="textstructure"/>
<!-- We don't need these drama elements: -->
<elementSpec ident="sp" mode="delete" module="core"/>
<elementSpec ident="speaker" mode="delete" module="core"/>
</schemaSpec>
</div>
```

Support for many schema languages

- ▶ TEI schemas can be generated for
 - ▶ XML DTD language
 - ▶ ISO RELAX NG language
 - ▶ W3C Schema Language
- ▶ Content models are defined using RELAX NG syntax
- ▶ Datatypes are defined in terms of W3C datatypes
- ▶ Some facilities (e.g. alternation, namespaces) cannot be expressed in DTD
- ▶ Additional constraints can be expressed in Schematron

Two reasons why standards fail

- ▶ The theory is not yet ripe
- ▶ The "not invented here" attitude: the community of users is too diverse

Coping with partially-baked ideas

In a TEI ODD, you can ...

- ▶ constrain the domain of a value list
- ▶ enforce Schematron rules about e.g. co-dependency
- ▶ provide new elements in your own namespace
- ▶ remove (non-mandatory) child elements

New elements

A schema is a grammar. How can you add new terminals to an existing syntax?

- ▶ All content models are expressed indirectly, by reference to element classes rather than elements
- ▶ Hence adding a new element is simply a matter of saying which class/es it belongs to

The TEI schema is also enriched with semantics. How can you explain what a new element means?

- ▶ Class membership also conveys some semantics
- ▶ ODD includes detailed documentation

Coping with the NIH Syndrome

- ▶ TEI P5 has extensive I18N features for translation of ...
 - ▶ schema objects
 - ▶ schema documentation
- ▶ See *Roma* at <http://www.tei-c.org/Roma/>
- ▶ TEI is hospitable to other namespaces
 - ▶ You can use SVG for graphics, MathML for math, Word Table markup if you like
 - ▶ (but note this doesn't solve the Other Overlap Problem)
- ▶ ODD also includes an `<equiv>` element for mapping to external ontologies

For example

Embedding SVG within TEI:

```
<figure>
  <svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg"
        width="6cm" height="5cm" viewBox="6 3 6 5">
    <ellipse xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg"
             style="fill:#ffffff" cx="9.75" cy="6.35" rx="2.75" ry="2.35"/>
  </svg>
</figure>
```

A user-defined attribute:

```
<div
  xmlns:my="http://www.example.org/ns/nonTEI">
  <p n="12" my:topic="rabbits">Flopsy, Mopsy, Cottontail,
  and Peter...</p>
</div>
```

An NVDL processor can validate a document using multiple namespace schemas

Conformance issues

A document is TEI Conformant if and only if it ...

- ▶ is a well-formed XML document
- ▶ can be validated against a TEI Schema, that is, a schema derived from the TEI Guidelines
- ▶ conforms to the TEI Abstract Model
- ▶ uses the TEI Namespace (and other namespaces where relevant) correctly
- ▶ is documented by means of a TEI Conformance ODD file which refers to the TEI Guidelines

Or if it can be transformed automatically using some TEI-defined procedures into such a document (it is TEI-conformable)

Standardization should not mean 'Do what I do', but rather 'Explain what you do in terms I can understand'

Evolution works!

1. Make modifications in your own namespace
2. Document them in an ODD
3. Propose them to the TEI Council as amendments or feature requests
4. TEI P5 now has a 6 month release cycle...

Visit <http://www.tei-c.org> for more background info

Visit <http://tei.sf.net> to download

Using the basic TEI structural elements

TEI @ Oxford

September 2008

TEI Infrastructure

- ▶ The TEI encoding scheme consists of a number of modules
- ▶ These declare XML elements and their attributes
- ▶ An element's declaration assigns it to one (or more) model classes
- ▶ Another part declares its possible content and attributes with reference to these classes
- ▶ This indirection allows strength and flexibility
- ▶ It makes it easy to add/exclude new elements by referencing existing classes

What is a module?

- ▶ A convenient way of grouping together a number of element declarations
- ▶ These are usually on a related topic or specific application
- ▶ Most chapters focus on elements drawn from a single module, which that chapter then defines
- ▶ A TEI Schema is created by selecting modules and add/removing elements from them as needed

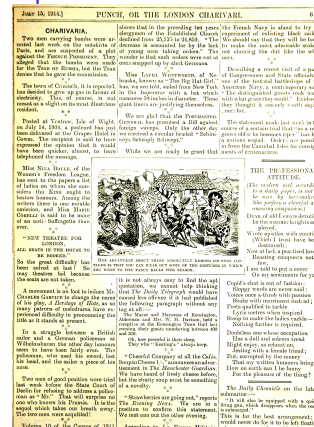
Modules

Module name	Chapter
analysis	Simple Analytic Mechanisms
certainty	Certainty and Responsibility
core	Elements Available in All TEI Documents
corpus	Language Corpora
dictionaries	Dictionaries
drama	Performance Texts
figures	Tables, Formulae, and Graphics
gaiji	Representation of Non-standard Characters and Glyphs
header	The TEI Header
iso-fs	Feature Structures
linking	Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment
msdescription	Manuscript Description
namesdates	Names, Dates, People, and Places
nets	Graphs, Networks, and Trees
spoken	Transcriptions of Speech
tagdocs	Documentation Elements
tei	The TEI Infrastructure
textcrit	Critical Apparatus
textstructure	Default Text Structure
transcr	Representation of Primary Sources
verse	Verse

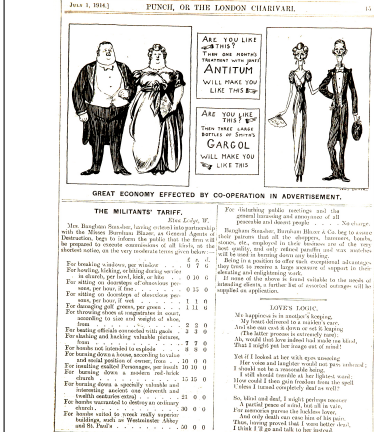
The Imaginary Punch Project

- ▶ **Punch** is a famous English humorous journal, published regularly between 1841 and 1992: see <http://www.punch.co.uk/historyofpunch.html>.
- ▶ A project plans to make available fully marked up texts of the journal, in conjunction with page images...
 - ▶ for social historians
 - ▶ for librarians
 - ▶ for linguists
- ▶ How will the TEI help? And which parts of the TEI will we use?

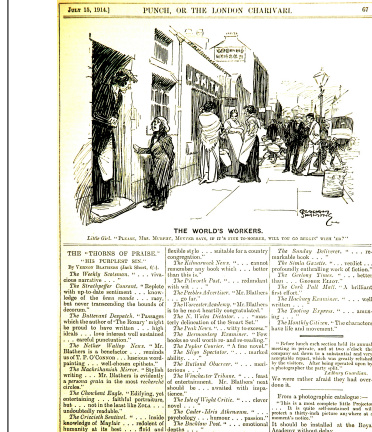
Example 1



Example 2



Example 3



Looking at Punch, what do we need to mark up?

- ▶ issue information and page number for reference purposes
- ▶ "chunks" or divisions of text, which may contain a picture, a poem, some prose, some drama, or a combination
- ▶ within the chunks, we can identify formal units such as
 - ▶ a picture, a caption
 - ▶ stanzas, lines
 - ▶ paragraphs
 - ▶ speeches and stage-directions
- ▶ and more...

TEI tags for the high level structure

We will treat each issue as a single `<text>` element, and each identifiable chunk within it as a `<div>` element of a particular type (e.g. cartoon, verse, prose)

For example, page 1 has two divisions,

```
<pb n="1"/>
<div type="cartoon">...</div>
<div type="poem">
  <head>Progress</head>...
</div>
```

page 2 also has two, of different types:

```
<pb n="2"/>
<div type="prose">
  <head>The enchanted castle</head>...
</div>
<div type="snippet">
  <head>Correspondence</head>...
</div>
```

Why divisions rather than pages?

Because a division can start on one page (page 5 for example) and finish on another (page 6)

We use an empty element `<pb>` to mark the boundary between pages, rather than enclosing each page in a `<div type="page">`.

```
<pb n="5"/>
<div type="cartoon">...</div>
<div type="review">
  <head>Egypt in Venice</head>...
  <pb n="6"/>
  ...
</div>
<div type="cartoon">...</div>
<div type="verse">
  <head>Enigma</head>...
</div>
<div type="snippets">...</div>
```

The sequence in which divisions appear is rather arbitrary.

Divisions can contain divisions...

```
<div type="snippets">
  <div type="snippet">Curiously... Chancellor</div>
  <div type="snippet">Men for the Antarctic... Canadians</div>
</div>
```

- ▶ TEI also provides division elements with names that indicate their degree of nesting (<div1>, <div2> etc.) which some people prefer
- ▶ Divisions must always tessellate: once "down" a level, you cannot pop "up" again within the same division.

Floating text

As mentioned above, <div>s must tessellate over the entire text

```
<div1>
  <p>... </p>
  <div2>
    <p>... </p>
  </div2>
  <div2>
    <p>... </p>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

is valid **but**

```
<div1>
  <p>... </p>
  <div2>
    <p>... </p>
  </div2>
  <p>... </p>
</div1>
```

is *not* valid.

A special <floatingText> element is available for "interruptions"

What are divisions made of?

(apart from other smaller divisions)

- ▶ <head> (heading)
- ▶ <p> (paragraph)
- ▶ <sp> (speech, contains any of the foregoing, also <stage> and <speaker>)
- ▶ <list> (contains <head>, <label>, <item>)
- ▶ <table>, (contains <row> containing <cell>) ...
- ▶ <l> (verse line) optionally grouped into <lg> (line group) stanzas
- ▶ <figure> (contains <graphic>, <figDesc>, <head>...)

For example....

Page 3 contains a figure and a dialogue....

```
<div type="cartoon">
  <figure>
    <head>When the ships come home</head>
    <figDesc>A man in Turkish dress lounges on a sofa,
      smoking a cigarette and consulting a book
      labelled "Naval ledger". Another man, in
      traditional Greek costume, stands beside him,
      also reading a notebook.</figDesc>
    <graphic url="Punch/XML/Graphics/003.png"/>
  </figure>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Greece.</speaker>
    <p>Isn't it time we started fighting again?</p>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Turkey.</speaker>
    <p>Yes, I daresay. How soon could you begin?</p>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Greece.</speaker>
    <p>Oh, in a few weeks.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Turkey.</speaker>
    <p>No good for me. Shan't be ready till
      the autumn.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
```

For example...

The militants' tariff (on Page 15) contains headings, paragraphs, and a table...

```
<div type="prose">
  <head>THE MILITANTS' TARIFF.</head>
  <head rend="right">Etna Lodge, W.</head>
  <p>Mrs. Bangham Smasher, having entered into partnership with the
    Misses Burnham Blazer, as General Agents of Destruction, begs to
    inform the public that the firm will be prepared to execute
    commissions of all kinds, at the shortest notice, on the very
    moderate terms given below : -
  </p>
  <table>
    <tr>
      <td>
        <row role="label">
          <cell>
            <cell>e</cell>
            <cell>s.</cell>
            <cell>d.</cell>
          </row>
          <row>
            <cell>For breaking windows, per window ...</cell>
            <cell>0</cell>
            <cell>7</cell>
            <cell>6</cell>
          </row>
          <row>
            <cell>For howling, kicking, or biting during service
              in church, per howl, kick, or bite ...</cell>
            <cell>0</cell>
            <cell>10</cell>
            <cell>6</cell>
          </row>
        </td>
      <td>
        ...
      </td>
    </tr>
  </table>
```

Global attributes

Some features (potentially) apply to everything:

- ▶ identity
- ▶ language
- ▶ rendition

TEI provides global attributes for these:

- ▶ @xml:id provides a unique identifier for any element;
- ▶ @n provides a name or number for any element
- ▶ @xml:lang specifies the language of any element, using an ISO standard code
- ▶ @rend and @rendition provide ways of specifying the visual appearance (rendition) of any element

For example...

Egypt in Venice (on Page 05) begins with two headings, one in French....

```
<div type="prose" xml:lang="en" xml:id="I1914-07-01_05_02">
  <head>Egypt in Venice.</head>
  <head xml:lang="fr" rend="it">"La Légende de Joseph."</head>
  <p>Those who know the kind of attractions that the
    Russian ballet offers in so many of its themes ....</p>
</div>
```

Each stanza of the poem on page 10 has a last line which is significantly indented:

```
<lg>
  <l>There were eight pretty walkers who went up a hill;</l>
  <l>They were Jessamine, Joseph and Japhet and Jill,</l>
  <l>And Allie and Sally and Tumbledown Bill.</l>
  <l rend="indent">And Farnaby Fullerton Rigby.</l>
</lg>
```

Macrostructure 1

All the issues of *Punch* for one year make up a volume. We could regard the volume as a single `<text>`, and each issue as a `<div>` within it. Or we could use the `<group>` element:

```
<text xml:id="v147">
  <front>
    <!-- introductory materials for volume 147 here -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text xml:id="I1914-07-01">
      <body>
        <!-- first issue (1 July) -->
      </body>
    </text>
    <text xml:id="I1914-07-15">
      <body>
        <!-- second issue (15 July) -->
      </body>
    </text>
    <!-- etc... -->
  </group>
  <back>
    <!-- volume index, appendix etc. -->
  </back>
</text>
```

Macrostructure 2

As well as the texts, we have detailed metadata about each volume, and images of its pages. These are the three parts of a canonical TEI document:

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- required; provides metadata -->
  </teiHeader>
  <facsimile>
    <!-- the text, represented in image form -->
  </facsimile>
  <text>
    <!-- the text, transcribed and marked up -->
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Macrostructure 3

If many such documents are grouped together to form a corpus (rather than a collection), it may be useful to factor out the metadata they have in common:

```
<teiCorpus>
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- shared metadata -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- specific metadata -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- ... -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- specific metadata -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- ... -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

What kinds of metadata?

For the *Punch Project* and for any other comparable project, we will need a place for such information as

- ▶ identification of the resource itself ("what is this thing?")
- ▶ statements of responsibility ("who did what when?")
- ▶ indication of source ("what was this derived from?")
- ▶ publication statement ("how is this item distributed and by whom?")
- ▶ declaration of encoding practice ("what do the codes we added mean?")

The TEI Header supports all these, and more.

The TEI Header

The TEI header was designed with two goals in mind

- ▶ needs of bibliographers and librarians trying to document 'electronic books'
- ▶ needs of text analysts trying to document 'coding practices' within digital resources

On the one hand, the Librarian's header

- ▶ uses standard bibliographic concepts
- ▶ respects established mappings to other such records (e.g. MARC)
- ▶ has a preference for structured data over loose prose

On the other, Everyman's header

- ▶ Supports a (potentially) huge range of very miscellaneous information, organized in fairly ad hoc ways -
- ▶ Unpredictable combinations of narrowly encoded documentation systems and loose prose descriptions

TEI Header Structure

The TEI header has four main components:

- ▶ `<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- ▶ `<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- ▶ `<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.
- ▶ `<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. (just about everything not covered in the other header elements)

Only `<fileDesc>` is required; the others are optional.

Simple TEI Header for Punch Project

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStm>
      <title>Punch, or the London Charivari, Vol. 147, July 1, 1914</title>
    </titleStm>
    <publicationStm>
      <idno type="gutenberg">24357</idno>
    </publicationStm>
    <availability>
      <p>This text is freely available for re-use
        under US and UK law, consult your local
        legal restrictions if elsewhere.</p>
    </availability>
    <publicationStm>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>This text is a TEI version of a Project Gutenberg
          text originally located at <ptr
            target="http://www.gutenberg.org/dirs/2/4/3/5/24357/" />.
          As per their license agreement we have removed all
          references to the PG trademark.</p>
        </sourceDesc>
      </publicationStm>
    <revisionDesc>
      <change when="2008-07-26T23:49:55.968+01:00"/>
    </revisionDesc>
  </teiHeader>
```

Below the paragraph...

Within the elements already introduced, TEI offers plenty of scope for mark-up of smaller components. For example:

- ▶ boundaries, such as page, column, or line breaks
- ▶ highlighting, emphasis and quotation
- ▶ editorial changes such as correction, normalization etc.
- ▶ names, numbers, dates, addresses...
- ▶ links and cross-references
- ▶ notes, annotation, indexing
- ▶ graphics
- ▶ bibliographic citations
- ▶ words and other analyses

Highlighting

By highlighting we mean any combination of typographic features (font, size, hue, etc.) which distinguishes the highlighted text from its surroundings. This may be for many reasons...

- ▶ to mark foreign, archaic, technical usages
- ▶ for emphasis when spoken
- ▶ to show something is not part of the text.. (e.g. cross references, titles, headings)
- ▶ or is attributed to some other agency inside or outside the text (e.g. direct speech, quotation)

TEI provides both a generic `<hi>` tag and a large number of specific ones...

A few highlighting examples

- ▶ `<hi>` (highlighted: reason unknown or unimportant)

```
<p>[The rest of this communication is
omitted owing to considerations of
space. <hi rend="sc">Ed</hi>.]</p>
```

- ▶ `<emph>` (emphasized)

```
<said>'E won't bite yer <emph>if you buy 'im</emph> guv'nor.</said>
```

- ▶ `<title>` and `<foreign>`:

```
<p>
  <foreign xml:lang="fr">À propos</foreign> of Oxford, it is a
  question whether that extremely amusing book
  <title>Verdant Green</title> is still much read by freshers.
</p>
```

- ▶ `<distinct>` (linguistically marked)

```
But then I remind myself
that the Russian ballet is nothing if not
<distinct>bizarre</distinct>
```

Quotation

Quotation marks can similarly be used to set off text for many reasons:

- ▶ `<q>` (used if the reason is unknown or unimportant)
- ▶ `<said>` (speech or thought)
- ▶ `<quote>` (attributed to an external source)
- ▶ `<mentioned>` and `<soCalled>` (nuances of narrative status)

```
<p>
  <said who="#Celia">I know a lovely tin of potted
  grouse,</said> said Celia, and she went off to cut some sandwiches.
</p>
```

```
<head>How to utilise the art of <soCalled>suggestion</soCalled>
</head>
<head>The Doctor, six down at the turn,
  <soCalled>suggests</soCalled> to his opponent that
  they are playing croquet, and wins by two and one.</head>
```

Quotation (continued)

Note that these elements can nest within one another:

```
<p>The poet returned to his work. <said>
  <quote>In
    tooth and claw,</quote>
  </said> he muttered to himself,
  <said>
    <quote>In tooth and claw.</quote>
  </said>
</p>
```


Editorial intervention

As a simple example, consider: 'Excuse me sir, but would you like to buy a nice little dawg?' on page 6.

We can:

- ▶ use `<or ig>` to show that "dawg" is what it says, even though this is a nonstandard spelling
- ▶ use `<r eg>` to show that "dog" is an editorially-supplied regularisation of what it says
- ▶ or provide both within a `<choice>` element to say either is a valid encoding:

```
... a nice little
<choice>
  <or ig> dawg </or ig>
  <r eg> dog </r eg>
</choice>
```

Names of persons, places, things...

- ▶ `<name>` (a name in the text, contains a proper noun or noun phrase)
- ▶ `<r s>` (a general-purpose name or referencing string)
- ▶ `<title>` (any form of title)

The `@type` attribute is useful for categorizing these, and they both also have `@key`, `@ref`, and `@nymRef` attributes.

Examples of names

Using `@type` to distinguish personal from geographic names:

```
<p>The scene opens at a party given by
<name type="person">Potiphar</name> in
<name type="place">Venice</name>. </p>
```

Using `@key` and `@ref` to de-reference names:

```
<p>
<label>Business done. </label>--The Commons
still harping on the Budget.
<name
  type="person"
  ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Timothy_Michael_Healy">
  Tim Healy</name> enlivened proceedings by vigorous personal attack
on <q>the most reckless and incapable
<rs key="LLG">Chancellor of the Exchequer</rs>
that ever sat on the Treasury Bench. </q>
<name key="LLG">Lloyd George's</name>
retort courteous looked forward to with interest.
</p>
```

Dates

- ▶ `<date>` contains a date and time in any format
- ▶ For processing it is convenient to add a normalized version, using the `@when` attribute
- ▶ Uncertain dates and times, and ranges, can be indicated by other attributes: `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`

```
<p>House of Commons, <date when="1914-06-22">Monday, June 22, 1914</date>. </p>
<p>
<date notAfter="1914-06-01" notBefore="1914-03-01">Sunday, a month
ago, </date> was hot.
</p>
```

Cross references

A cross reference is a link from one point in a text (the source) to another (the target).

TEI provides generic elements `<ptr>` and `<ref>` for this purpose. If the linking text can be automatically generated use `<ptr>`; otherwise use `<ref>`.

The source is the location of the `<ptr>` or `<ref>`; the target is specified by the `@target` attribute, in the form of a URI reference.

See `<ref target="#Section12">section 12 on page 34</ref>`.

See `<ptr target="#Section12"/>`.

Bibliographic Citations

TEI provides special elements for bibliographic citations or references:

- ▶ `<bibl>` (loosely structured)
- ▶ `<biblStruct>` (standard bibliographic structure)
- ▶ `<listBibl>` (encloses a bibliography)

These are typically used in preparing bibliographies, or in footnotes. But even in Punch, there are examples.

Simple <bibl> Example

In Punch, bibliographic citations are usually associated with a quotation from another paper:
The <cit> element groups the two:

```
<cit>
  <quote>It was the time when Henry III. was
    batting with Simon de Montfort and his
    Barons. </quote>
  <bibl>
    <title>Straits Times. </title>
  </bibl>
</cit>
```

Embedded notes

Notes, whether appearing in the original source, or added by an editor, can be marked using the <note> element.
We might use this to add biographical details to the Punch transcriptions:

```
<p>By-the-by, it is denied that
Sir <name rend="sc">Joseph Beecham</name>
<note>Sir Joseph Beecham, 1st Baronet
  (8 June 1848 - 23 October 1916)... </note>
was in any way responsible for the Government's
"Pills for Earthquakes," by which it was hoped to
avert the Irish crisis. </p>

<note> has attributes @place and @resp
```

Linked notes

Since we have several references to the same person, it might be better to put the notes elsewhere and point to them from the names:

```
<div type="notes">
  <note xml:id="BEECHJ0">Sir Joseph Beecham, 1st Baronet (8 June 1848 -
    23 October 1916) the eldest son of Thomas Beecham (1820-1907) played a
    large part in the growth and expansion of his father's medicinal pill
    business which he joined in 1866.... </note>
</div>
<!-- other notes -->
<div type="snippets">
  <p>... Both Earl <name rend="sc">Beauchamp</name>
    and <name>Sir <ref target="#BEECHJ0">Joseph Beecham</ref>
    </name> appear
    in the recent Honours List. </p>
  <p>By-the-by, it is denied that Sir <name rend="sc" ref="#BEECHJ0">Joseph
    Beecham</name> was in any way responsible... </p>
</div>
```

Could also use specialised <person> element, in this case.
"Elsewhere" can be *anywhere* on the Internet...

Names, People, and Places

TEI @ Oxford

September 2008

What's in a name?

- ▶ We've already met `<name>` and `<rs>` for any form of name or referring string.
- ▶ The namesdates module also provides specialisations of these: `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, and `<orgName>`
- ▶ Each can be further decomposed
- ▶ They can also be associated with a named entity
- ▶ (Names are also entities)

Personal Names

For example...

- ▶ `<persName>` (personal name) a noun referring to a person ... equivalent to `<name type="person">`
- ▶ `<surName>` a family (inherited) name
- ▶ `<foreName>` a forename, given or baptismal name
- ▶ `<roleName>` a name component indicating a particular role or position in society
- ▶ `<addName>` (additional name) nickname, epithet, alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name
- ▶ `<nameLink>` a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it

```
<persName>
  <foreName type="first">Inês</foreName>
  <foreName type="matronymic">Barroca</foreName>
  <surName>Rahtz</surName>
</persName>
```

Names as referents (1)

In a text we might find the same person referred to on different occasions in any number of different ways:

```
... <persName>Clara Schumann</persName>...
<persName>Clara</persName>
...
<persName>Frau Schumann</persName>
```

All of these names refer to the same entity

We can use an attribute on any naming element to specify which entity is being referenced:

- ▶ `@key` if we are supplying an externally-defined code for the entity
- ▶ `@ref` if we are pointing to a definition of the entity

Names as referents (2)

For example:-

```
... <persName ref="#CS">Clara Schumann</persName>...
<persName ref="#CS">Clara</persName>
...
<persName key="CS123">Frau Schumann</persName>
<!-- ... elsewhere -->
<person xml:id="CS" sex="2">
  <persName xml:lang="de">
    <foreName type="first">Clara</foreName>
    <foreName type="middle">Josephine</foreName>
    <surName type="maiden">Wieck</surName>
    <surName type="married">Schumann</surName>
  </persName>
</person>
```

The thing itself (1)

TEI provides special-purpose elements for maintaining structured information about named entities (as well as their names):

- ▶ `<person>`, `<place>`, `<event>`
- ▶ may be grouped into `<listPerson>`, `<listPlace>`, (and soon `<listEvent>`)
- ▶ relationships can also be modelled, explicitly using `<relation>` or implicitly by context

```
<person xml:id="VM1893" sex="1">
  <persName xml:lang="ru">Владимир Владимирович Маяковский</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="fr">Wladimir Maïakowski</persName>
  <birth when="1893-07-19">7 July (05) 1893,
  <placeName ref="#BGDT" xml:lang="en">Baghdadi, Georgia</placeName>
  </birth>
  <death when="1930-04-14"/>
  <occupation>Poet and playwright, among the foremost representatives of
  early-20th century Russian Futurism.</occupation>
  <!-- ... -->
</person>
```

Traits, states, and events

The scope of elements one might record for a named entity is *large*. The TEI provides three generic elements, and some specific ones.

We identify three main classes of information:

- ▶ characteristics or traits which do not, by and large, change over time
- ▶ characteristics or states which hold true only at a specific time
- ▶ events or incidents which may lead to a change of state or, less frequently, trait

For a person, typical traits are such things as `<faith>`, `<sex>`, `<socEcStatus>`; typical states are such things as `<occupation>`, `<residence>`, `<education>`; typical events are such things as `<birth>` and `<death>`.

Personal Relationships

- ▶ `<relationGrp>` (relation group) provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations
- ▶ `<relation>` (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of participants
 - `@name` supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance
 - `@active` identifies the 'active' participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one
 - `@mutual` supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally
 - `@passive` identifies the 'passive' participants in a non-mutual relationship

Example

```
<person xml:id="jsbach" sex="1">
  <persName>Johann Sebastian Bach</persName>
</person>
<person xml:id="cdbach" sex="2">
  <persName>Catharina Dorothea Bach</persName>
</person>
<person xml:id="ghbach" sex="1">
  <persName>Gottfried Heinrich Bach</persName>
</person>
<!-- ... -->
<relationGrp type="children" subtype="first-marriage">
  <relation name="parent" active="#jsbach" pas-
sive="#cdbach"/>
</-- ... -->
</relationGrp>
<relationGrp type="children" subtype="second-marriage">
  <relation name="parent" active="#jsbach" pas-
sive="#ghbach"/>
</-- ... -->
</relationGrp>
```

Other kinds of entity

- ▶ `<org>`: a named collection of people regarded as a single unit, such as a business, institution, or tribe.
- ▶ `<place>`: a named location of any kind (including mythological and non-terrestrial places)
- ▶ These can be grouped in the same way (using `<listOrg>` or `<listPlace>`), and also have states, traits, and events.

Places

- ▶ Places can be identified solely in terms of geographical features or locations, e.g.

```
<place>
  <placeName>
    <geogFeat>mount</geogFeat>
    <geogName>Sinai</geogName>
  </placeName>
</place>
```

- ▶ More usually, they are identified in geo-political terms, using
 - ▶ administrative units such as `<bloc>`, `<country>`, `<region>`, `<settlement>`, `<district>`
 - ▶ physical location using `<geo>` and `<offset>`
- ▶ Note that all these things are traits — they may change over time

For example: Mayakovsky's birth place

```
<place xml:id="BGDT">
  <placeName xml:lang="ka">ბაღდათი</placeName>
  <placeName xml:lang="en">Baghdati</placeName>
  <placeName notAfter="1990" notBefore="1940">
    Mayakovsky</placeName>
  <location type="geopolitical">
    <country>Georgia</country>
    <region type="geog">Imereti</region>
  </location>
  <location type="physical">
    <offset>West of</offset>
    <placeName>
      <geogFeat>River</geogFeat>
      <geogName>Khanistskali</geogName>
    </placeName>
    <geo>42.102298, 42.832947</geo>
  </location>
  <population when="2007">
    <p>4,700 people</p>
  </population>
</place>
```

Places can be nested (unlike people)

```
<place xml:id="LT">
  <country>Lithuania</country>
  <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
  <place xml:id="LT-VN">
    <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
  </place>
  <place xml:id="LT-KA">
    <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
  </place>
</place>
```

Sources

Responsibility and uncertainty about the sources can be asserted by using attributes from the att.editLike class:

```
<org xml:id="MXY" type="tribe" resp="#herodotus">
  <orgName>The Maxyans</orgName>
  <country>Libya</country>
  <desc>According to Herodotus, they were a west Libyan
    tribe who said that they were descended from the men
    of Troy.</desc>
</org>
```

Dates and Periods

The support for dates in TEI P5 has concentrated on enabling greater use of international standards (W3C and ISO)

- ▶ <date> contains a date in any format
- ▶ <time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format

Example

```
<place xml:id="leipzig-univ">
  <placeName>University of Leipzig</placeName>
  <event type="foundation">
    <desc>The university was founded on
    <date when="1409-12-02">December 2, 1409</date>.
    </desc>
  </event>
</place>
```

W3C Date Formats

Thanks to the mapping to W3C (att.dataable.w3c) and ISO date formats, automatic processing and validation of expression of dates and times are now allowed

att.dataable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes

- @when supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form
- @notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form
- @notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form
- @from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form
- @to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form

The W3C standard form for dates is YYYY-MM-DD.

Example

```
<place xml:id="leipzig-univ2">
  <placeName>University of Leipzig</placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <event type="opening" notBefore="1409-09-09">
    <desc>The <foreign xml:lang="la">Alma mater
      Lipsiensis</foreign> opened in 1409, after it
      had been officially endorsed by Pope Alexander
      V in his Bull of Acknowledgment on
      (September 9 of that year).</desc>
    </event>
  </place>
```

ISO Date Formats

For some uses the subset of ISO 8601 which is used by the W3C might not be enough, so the TEI provides an optional `att.dateable.iso` class to give the following attributes if needed:

- `@when-iso` the value of a date or time in a standard form
- `@notBefore-iso` the earliest possible date for the event
- `@notAfter-iso` the latest possible date for the event
- `@from-iso` the starting point of the period
- `@to-iso` the ending point of the period
- `@dur-iso` the length of this element in time

The ISO standard, for example, allows specifying dates and durations with a precision by omitting some digits to the left, while the W3C datatypes require in most cases conformance to a stricter precision.

Example

```
<p>He arrived <time when="12:00:00">around noon</time>. He  
arrived <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>. </p>
```

Time Periods and Relative Chronology

Time periods and relative chronology can also be defined.

```
<encodingDesc>  
  <classDecl>  
    <taxonomy xml:id="periods">  
      <category xml:id="hellenistic">  
        <catDesc>  
          <ref  
            target="http://www.wikipedia.com/wiki/Hellenistic">  
Hellenistic</ref>. Commonly treated as  
        <date notBefore="-0323" notAfter="-0031"/>. </catDesc>  
      </category>  
    </taxonomy>  
  </classDecl>  
</encodingDesc>  
<p>The city was built near a marble quarry which was extensively exploited in  
the  
<date period="#hellenistic">Hellenistic</date> and  
<date period="#roman">Roman</date> periods. </p>
```

TEI @ Oxford

Transcribable features

Here are some of the kinds of features concerned:

- ## Letter forms

Letter forms

- ## Non-Unicode characters

or

in header:

Structure and layout

- 21

Abbreviation

Abbreviations are highly characteristic of manuscript materials of all kinds. Western MSS traditionally distinguish:

- Suspensions** the first letter or letters of the word are written, generally followed by a point, or other marker: for example *e.g.* for *exempla gratia*
- Contractions** both first and last letters are written, generally with some other mark of abbreviation such as a superscript stroke, or, less commonly, a point or points: e.g. *Mr.* for *Mister*.
- Brevigraphs** Special signs or tittels, such as the Tironian nota used for 'et', the letter p with a barred tail commonly used for *per*, the letter c with a circumflex used for *cum* (c) etc
- Superscripts** Superscript letters (vowels or consonants) are often used to indicate various kinds of contraction: e.g. *w* followed by superscript *ch* for *which*.

Encoding abbreviations (1)

TEI proposes two levels of encoding:

- ▶ the whole of an abbreviated word and the whole of its expansion: `<abbr>` and `<expan>`
- ▶ abbreviatory signs or characters and the 'invisible' characters they imply: `<am>` and `<ex>`

The Old Icelandic word *hann* ('he') is usually written as a brevigraph, combining the letter *h* with a horizontal stroke representing nasalisation (Unicode character 0305, functionally similar to the modern tilde). It looks like this:



Encoding abbreviations (2)

Depending on editorial policy, we might represent this combination in any one of the following ways:

```
<abbr>h&#x305; </abbr>
```

```
<expan>hann</expan>
```

```
h<am>&#x305; </am>
```

```
h<ex>ann</ex>
```

```
<abbr>h<am>&#x305; </am> </abbr>
```

```
<expan>h<ex>ann</ex> </expan>
```

Encoding abbreviations (3)

We could also indicate multiple alternatives (at either level) by using the `<choice>` element

```
h<choice>
  <am>&#x305; </am>
  <ex>ann</ex>
</choice>
<choice>
  <abbr>h&#x305; </abbr>
  <expan>hann</expan>
</choice>
```

And much more besides...

Encoding abbreviations (3)

The `@type` attribute on `<abbr>` allows us to provide alternative renderings for the same markup in different contexts.

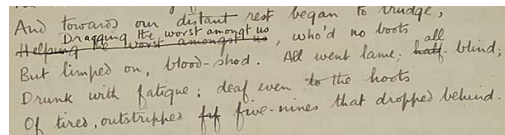
```
<choice>
  <abbr type="susp">k<am>&#x307; </am>
  </abbr>
  <expan>k<ex>onungr</ex>
  </expan>
</choice>
<choice>
  <abbr type="tittel">ml<am>&#x305; </am>i</abbr>
  <expan>m<ex>æl</ex>l<ex>t</ex>i</expan>
  </choice>
```

k(onungr) mællti

As elsewhere, the `@resp` and `@cert` attributes can also be used to indicate who is responsible for an expansion, and the degree of certainty attached to it.

Additions, deletions, and substitutions

- ▶ `<add>` (addition) or `` (deletion) are used for evident alterations in the source
- ▶ a combined addition and deletion may be marked using `<subst>` (substitution)



Additions, deletions, and substitutions

```
<l>And towards our distant rest began to trudge,</l>
<l>
<subst>
  <del>Helping the worst amongst us</del>
  <add>Dragging the worst amongst us</add>
</subst>, who'd no boots
</l>
<l>But limped on, blood-shod. All went lame;
<subst>
  <del>half-</del>
  <add>all</add>
</subst> blind;</l>
<l>Drunk with fatigue; deaf even to the hoots</l>
<l>Of tired, outstripped <del>five</del> five-nines that dropped behind.</l>
```

Corrections and emendations

The `<sic>` element can be used to indicate that the reading of the manuscript is erroneous or nonsensical, while `<corr>` (correction) can be used to provide what in the editor's opinion is the correct reading:

```
<sic>giorit</sic>
```

```
<corr>giorir</corr>
```

Alternatively, they may be combined within a `<choice>` element, thus allowing the possibility of providing multiple corrections:

```
<choice>
  <sic>giorit</sic>
  <corr cert="high">giorir</corr>
  <corr cert="low">gioret</corr>
</choice>
```

Supplied text

Sometimes, a transcript may need to include words not visibly present in the source:

- ▶ because the carrier has been damaged or is barely legible
- ▶ because of (assumed) scribal error

The `<supplied>` element is provided for use in either situations; the `@reason` attribute is used to distinguish them.

```
...Dragging the worst
among<supplied reason="omitted">s</supplied>t us...
```

Metadata for supplied text

Attributes `@resp` and `@cert` can be used here as elsewhere. A `@source` attribute is also available to indicate that another witness supports the reconstruction:

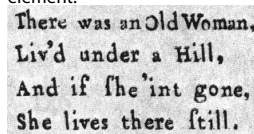
```
<p>ath beir <supplied reason="omitted" source="AM02-152">mundu</supplied>
sundr. ganga</p>
```

When missing text cannot be confidently reconstructed, the `<gap>` element should be used. Its `@reason` attribute explains the reason for the omission and its `@extent` attribute indicates its presumed size.

```
<gap reason="damage" extent="7cm"/>
```

Normalization

Source texts rarely use modern normalized orthography. For retrieval and other processing reasons, such information may be useful in a transcription. The `<reg>` (regularized) element is available used to mark a normalized form; the `<orig>` (original) element to indicate a non-standard spelling. These elements can optionally be grouped as alternatives using the `<choice>` element:



Normalization example

```
<lg>
<l>There was an Old Woman,</l>
<l>
  <choice>
    <orig>Liv'd</orig>
    <reg>Lived</reg>
  </choice> under a hill,</l>
<l>And if she <orig>'int</orig> gone,</l>
<l>She lives there still.</l>
</lg>
```

Why are manuscript descriptions special?

- ▶ Manuscripts are *unique objects*, sometimes (though not always) of great cultural or political value
- ▶ Books, by contrast, exist in multiple copies, and can be described adequately by well-established and formalized bibliographic conventions.
- ▶ For manuscripts, there are several traditions, often descriptive or *belle lettriste*, and little consensus.

Similar concerns apply to other text-bearing objects.

Objectives

The TEI `<msDesc>` element is intended for several different kinds of applications:

- ▶ standalone database of library records (finding aid)
- ▶ discursive text collecting many records (catalogue raisonné)
- ▶ metadata component within a digital surrogate (electronic edition)
- ▶ tool for 'quantitative codicology'

Catalogue Raisonné

An `<msDesc>` can appear anywhere a `<p>` paragraph can

```
<div>
  <head>The Arnamagnæan Institute and its records</head>
  <p>Probably the finest collection of .....
</p>
  <p>For example: </p>
  <msDesc xml:id="AMI-1" xml:lang="en">
<!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
  <p>In the following manuscript...
</p>
  <msDesc xml:id="AMI-2" xml:lang="en">
<!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
</div>
```

Digital edition

- ▶ metadata in the header
- ▶ transcription in the body, with links to
- ▶ images in a `<facsimile>` element

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!-- ... metadata describing the manuscript -->
<!-- includes a msDesc within the sourceDesc -->
  </teiHeader>
  <facsimile>
<!-- ... metadata describing the digital images -->
  </facsimile>
  <text>
<!-- (optional) transcription of the manuscript -->
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Example minimal structure

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>[Title of manuscript]</title>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <contributor>[name of data provider]</contributor>
      <idno>[project-specific identifier]</idno>
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
      <msDesc xml:id="ex1" xml:lang="en">
<!-- [full manuscript description] -->
      </msDesc>
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
    <change when="2008-01-01">[revision information]</change>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Quantitative Codicology: is it possible?

Two conflicting desires:

- ▶ preserve (or perpetuate) existing descriptive prose
- ▶ reliable search, retrieval, and analysis of data

The `<msDesc>` tries, wherever possible, to have its cake and eat it.

Components of a manuscript description

We separate, and tag differently, aspects concerned with...

- identification
- intellectual content
- physical description
- history and curation
- ... and other manuscript descriptions

msDesc structure

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex2" xml:lang="en">
  <msIdentifier>
    <!-- Repository location, shelfmarks, etc. -->
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <!-- Structured description of MS contents -->
  </msContents>
  <physDesc>
    <!-- Physical and codicological description -->
  </physDesc>
  <history>
    <!-- Origin, provenance, acquisition, etc. -->
  </history>
  <additional>
    <!-- Additional bibliographic and curatorial information,
    and associated materials etc. -->
  </additional>
  <msPart>
    <!-- Composite manuscript details -->
  </msPart>
</msDesc>
```

<msIdentifier> is the only one that is required.

Simple example <msDesc>

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex3" xml:lang="en">
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
    <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
    <idno>MS. Add. A. 61</idno>
    <altIdentifier type="other">
      <idno>28843</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
  <p>In Latin, on parchment: written in more than one hand of the 13th
  cent. in England: 7 1/4 x 5 1/4 in., i + 55 leaves, in double columns: with
  a few coloured capitals. </p>
  <p>'Hic incipit Bruitis Anglie,' the De
  origine et gestis Regum Angliae of Geoffrey of Monmouth (Galfridus
  Monumetensis: beg. 'Cum mecum multa & de multis.' </p>
  <p>On fol. 54v very faint is 'Iste liber est fratris guillelmi de
  buria de ... Roberti ordinis fratrum Predicatorum], '14th cent. (?):
  'hanauilla' is written at the foot of the page (15th cent.). Bought
  from the rev. W. D. Macray on March 17, 1863, for £1 10s. </p>
</msDesc>
```

Structured form of <msDesc> (1)

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex4" xml:lang="en">
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
    <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
    <idno>MS. Add. A. 61</idno>
    <altIdentifier type="internal">
      <idno>28843</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <msItem>
      <author xml:lang="en">Geoffrey of Monmouth</author>
      <author xml:lang="la">Galfridus Monumetensis</author>
      <title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">De origine et gestis Regum
      Angliae</title>
      <rubric xml:lang="la">Hic incipit Bruitis Anglie</rubric>
      <incipit xml:lang="la">Cum mecum multa & de multis</incipit>
      <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
    </msItem>
  </msContents>
  <!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
```

Structured form of <msDesc> (2)

```
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
      <support>
        <p>Parchment. </p>
      </support>
    </supportDesc>
    <extent>i + 55 leaves <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="in">
      <height>7 1/4</height>
      <width>5 1/4</width>
    </dimensions>
  </objectDesc>
  <supportDesc>
    <layoutDesc>
      <layout columns="2">
        <p>In double columns. </p>
      </layout>
    </layoutDesc>
  </supportDesc>
  <handDesc>
    <p>Written in more than one hand. </p>
  </handDesc>
  <decoDesc>
    <p>With a few coloured capitals. </p>
  </decoDesc>
</physDesc>
```

Structured form of <msDesc> (2)

```
<history>
  <origin>
    <p>Written in <origPlace>England</origPlace> in the
    <origDate notAfter="1300" notBefore="1200">13th cent. </origDate>
  </p>
  </origin>
  <provenance>
    <p>On fol. 54v very faint is <quote xml:lang="la">Iste liber est
    fratris guillelmi de buria de
    <gap reason="illegible"> Roberti ordinis
    fratrum Predicatorum</ex>
    </quote>, 14th cent. (?):
    <quote>hanauilla</quote> is written at the foot of
    the page (15th cent.). </p>
  </provenance>
  <acquisition>
    <p>Bought from the rev. <name type="person" key="MCRAVMD">W. D.
    Macray</name> on
    <date when="1863-03-17">March 17,
    1863</date>, for £1 10s. </p>
  </acquisition>
</history>
```

Identification (1)

The `<msIdentifier>`

Traditional three part specification:

- ▶ place (`<country>`, `<region>`, `<settlement>`)
- ▶ repository (`<institution>`, `<repository>`)
- ▶ identifier (`<collection>`, `<idno>`)

```
<msIdentifier>
  <country>France</country>
  <settlement>Troyes</settlement>
  <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
  <idno>S0</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

Identification (2)

Alternative or additional names can also be included:

```
<msIdentifier>
  <country>Denmark</country>
  <settlement>København</settlement>
  <repository>Det Arnamagnæanske Institut </repository>
  <idno>AM 45 fol. </idno>
  <msName xml:lang="la">Codex Frisianus</msName>
  <msName xml:lang="is">Frissbók</msName>
</msIdentifier>
```

Intellectual Content

- ▶ May simply use paragraphs of text...
- ▶ ... or a tree of `<msItem>` elements
- ▶ ... optionally preceded by a prose summary

We can describe the content in general terms:

```
<msContents>
  <p>An extraordinary charivari of heroic deeds and
  improving tales, including an early version of
  <title>Guy of Warwick</title> and several hymns.
</p>
</msContents>
```

or we can provide detail about each distinct item:

```
<msContents>
  <summary>An extraordinary charivari of heroic deeds,
  improving tales, and hymns</summary>
  <msItem>
    <!-- details of Guy of Warwick here -->
  </msItem>
  <!-- other items here -->
</msContents>
```

The `<msItem>` element

Manuscripts contain identifiable items, usually physically tied to a locus.

- ▶ `<locus>`, if present, must be given first
- ▶ then any of the following, in a specified order:
 - ▶ `<author>`, `<respStmt>`
 - ▶ `<title>`, `<rubric>`, `<incipit>`, `<explicit>`, `<colophon>`, `<finalRubric>`
 - ▶ `<quote>`, `<textLang>`, `<decoNote>`, `<bibl>`, `<listBibl>`, `<note>` ...
 - ▶ ... or nested `<msItem>`s

`<msContents>` with multiple `<msItem>`s

```
<msContents>
  <msItem n="1">
    <locus>fol. 5r-7v</locus>
    <title>An ABC</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>INEV</title>
      <biblScope type="pages">239</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="2">
    <locus>fol. 7v-8v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="fr">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>INEV</title>
      <biblScope type="pages">3747</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <!-- ... -->
  <msItem n="6">
    <locus>fol. 14r-126v</locus>
    <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
    <note>Bk. 1: 71- Bk. 5: 1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
    throughout</note>
  </msItem>
</msContents>
```

Physical Description

An artificial (but helpful) grouping of many distinct items.

You can simply supply paragraphs of prose, covering such topics as

- ▶ `<objectDesc>`: the physical carrier
- ▶ `<handDesc>`: what is carried on it
- ▶ `<musicNotation>`, `<decoDesc>`, `<additions>`
- ▶ `<bindingDesc>` and `<sealDesc>`
- ▶ `<accMat>`: accompanying material

Or, group your discussion within the specific elements mentioned above.

Similarly, within the specific elements, you can supply paragraphs of prose, or further specific elements.

The carrier 1

The <objectDesc> contains just paragraphs, or <supportDesc> and <layoutDesc>

```
<objectDesc form="codex">
  <supportDesc material="mixed">
    <p>Early modern <material>parchment</material> and
    <material>paper</material>. </p>
  </supportDesc>
  <layoutDesc>
    <layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32"/>
  </layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

The carrier 2

A more complex substructure with specific elements for <support>, <extent>, <foliation>, <collation>, <condition>.

Multiple layouts may also be specified:

```
<layoutDesc>
  <layout ruledLines="25" columns="1">
    <p>
      <locus from="1r-202v"/>
      <locus from="210r-212v"/>
      Between 25 and 32 ruled lines. </p>
    </layout>
    <layout ruledLines="34 50" columns="1">
      <p>
        <locus from="203r-209v"/>Between 34 and 50 ruled lines. </p>
      </p>
    </layout>
  </layoutDesc>
```

<handDesc> and <decoDesc>

- ▶ <handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript.
- ▶ <decoNote> contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components.

<handDesc> examples

```
<handDesc hands="2">
  <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
  unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
  ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably Verner
  Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand on
  f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial. </p>
</handDesc>

<handDesc hands="3">
  <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-1" scope="minor" script="other">
    <p>The first part of the manuscript, <locus from="1v" to="72v:4">fols
    1v-72v:4</locus>, is written in a
    practised Icelandic Gothic bookhand. This hand is not
    found elsewhere. </p>
  </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-2" scope="major" script="other">
    <p>The second part of the manuscript, <locus from="72v:4" to="194v">fols
    72v:4-194</locus>, is
    written in a hand contemporary with the first; it can
    also be found in a fragment of <title>Knyttlinga
    saga</title>, <ref>AM 20b II fol.</ref>. </p>
  </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="Eirsp-3" scope="minor" script="other">
    <p>The third hand has written the majority of the
    chapter headings. This hand has been identified as the
    one also found in <ref>AM 221 fol.</ref>. </p>
  </handNote>
</handDesc>
```

<additions>

The <additions> element can be used to list or describe any additions to the manuscript, such as marginalia, scribbles, doodles, etc., which are considered to be of interest or importance.

```
<additions>
  <p>The text of this manuscript is not interpolated with
  sentences from Royal decrees promulgated in 1294, 1305
  and 1314. In the margins, however, another somewhat
  later scribe has added the relevant paragraphs of
  these decrees, see pp. 8, 24, 44, 47 etc. </p>
  <p>As a humorous gesture the scribe in one opening of
  the manuscript, pp. 36 and 37, has prolonged the lower
  stems of one letter f and five letters p and has them
  drizzle down the margin. </p>
</additions>
```

<accMat>

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period.

```
<accMat> A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the
envelope with the letter. It
is not catalogued separately. </accMat>
```

History

- ▶ <origin>: where it all began
- ▶ <provenance>: everything in between
- ▶ <acquisition>: how you acquired it

<origin> is datable element and thus has attributes notBefore and notAfter

Example

```
<history>
  <origin>
    <p>Written in <origPlace>England</origPlace> in the
    <origDate notAfter="1300" notBefore="1200">13th
    cent. </origDate>
  </origin>
  <provenance>
    <p>On fol. 54v very faint is <q>Iste liber
    est fratris guillelmi de buria de
    <gap reason="illegible"/>
    Roberti ordinis fratrum Pred<expan>icatorum</expan>
  </p>
  </q>
  14th cent. (?): <q>hanauilla</q> is written at the
  foot of the page (15th cent.). </p>
  </provenance>
  <acquisition>
    <p>Bought from the rev. <name type="person">W. D.
    Macray</name> on <date when="1863-03-17"> March 17,
    1863</date>,
    for 1pound 10s. </p>
  </acquisition>
</history>
```

Additional information

- ▶ <adminInfo>: administrative information
- ▶ <surrogates>: information about other surrogates eg pictures
- ▶ <accMat>: accompanying material
- ▶ <listBibl>: bibliography

Administrative information

- ▶ record history
- ▶ availability
- ▶ custodial history
- ▶ miscellaneous remarks

```
<adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
    <source>
      <p>Information transcribed from <ref target="IMEV123">IMEV 123</ref>
    </p>
    </source>
  </recordHist>
  <custodialHist>
    <custEvent type="conservation" notBefore="1961-03" notAfter="1963-02">
      <p>Conserved between March 1961 and February 1963 at Birgitte Dalls
      Konserveringsværksted. </p>
    </custEvent>
    <custEvent type="photography" notBefore="1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-05-
    30">
      <p>Photographed in May 1988 by AMI/FA. </p>
    </custEvent>
    <custEvent type="other" notBefore="1989-11-13" notAfter="1989-11-13">
      <p>Dispatched to Iceland 13 November 1989. </p>
    </custEvent>
  </custodialHist>
</adminInfo>
```

And finally

A <msDesc> can contain a nested <msDesc>, <msPart>, catering for a combination of two MSS, formerly distinct.

```
<msDesc xml:id="ex5" xml:lang="en">
  <msIdentifier>
    <msName xml:lang="la">Codex Suprasliensis</msName>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier type="partial">
      <settlement>Ljubljana</settlement>
      <repository>Narodna in univerzitetna knjižnica</repository>
      <idno>MS Kopitar 2</idno>
      <note>Contains ff. 10 to 42 only</note>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msPart>
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier type="partial">
      <settlement>Warszawa</settlement>
      <repository>Biblioteka Narodowa</repository>
      <idno>B0 3.201</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msPart>
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier type="partial">
      <settlement>Sankt-Peterburg</settlement>
      <repository>Rossiiskaia natsional'naia biblioteka</repository>
      <idno>O.p.I.72</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msPart>
</msDesc>
```